GARMIN®

D2™ MACH 2 SERIES

Aviator Smartwatch

Owner's Manual

Table of Contents

Introduction.....7
- Getting Started..... 7
- Button Functions..... 7
- Touchscreen Functions..... 8
  - Enabling and Disabling the Touchscreen..... 9
- Customizing the Watch Face..... 9

Apps and Activities.....10
- Apps..... 10
  - Workouts..... 12
  - Using the Saved App..... 15
  - Recording a Voice Note..... 16
  - Using Voice Commands..... 16
  - Using the Messenger App..... 18
  - Calling from the Messenger Calls App..... 18
  - Garmin Pay™..... 19
  - Setting Personal Minimum Alerts... 20
  - Viewing PLANESYNC™ Data..... 20
  - Viewing Aviation Waypoints..... 21
  - Applied Ballistics®..... 22
  - Using the Xero® Chronograph App... 29
  - Dive Planning..... 29
  - Viewing Tide Information..... 30
  - Marking Your Anchor Location..... 31
  - Trolling Motor Remote..... 31
- Activities..... 31
  - Starting an Activity..... 32
  - Stopping an Activity..... 33
  - Flying..... 34
  - Outdoor Activities..... 37
  - Running..... 45
  - Swimming..... 48
  - Cycling..... 50
  - Multisport..... 50
  - Gym Activities..... 52
  - Diving..... 53
  - Winter Sports..... 60
  - Water Sports..... 60
  - Other Activities..... 63
- Customizing Activities and Apps..... 66
  - Customizing the App List..... 66
  - Customizing Your Favorite Activities List..... 66
  - Customizing the Data Screens..... 66
  - Creating a Custom Activity..... 67
  - Activity Settings..... 67

Controls..... 74
- Customizing the Controls Menu..... 76
- Using the LED Flashlight..... 76
  - Editing the Custom Flashlight Strobe..... 77
- Clearing User Data with the Kill Switch Feature..... 77

Glances..... 78
- Viewing Glances..... 80
- Customizing the Glances List..... 81
  - Creating a Glances Folder..... 81
- Body Battery™..... 81
  - Tips for Improved Body Battery™ Data..... 81
- Health Status..... 81
- Performance Measurements..... 81
  - About VO2 Max. Estimates..... 82
  - Viewing Your Predicted Race Times..... 83
  - Heart Rate Variability Status..... 83
  - Performance Condition..... 83
  - Running Economy..... 84
  - Getting Your FTP Estimate..... 84
  - Lactate Threshold..... 84
  - Viewing Your Real-Time Stamina.... 85
  - Viewing Your Power Curve..... 85
- Training Status..... 85
  - Training Status Levels..... 86
  - Acute Load..... 87
  - Recovery Time..... 88
  - Heat and Altitude Performance Acclimation..... 88
  - Pausing and Resuming Your Training Status..... 88
- Training Readiness..... 89
- Running Tolerance..... 89
- Endurance Score..... 90
- Hill Score..... 90
- Viewing Cycling Ability..... 90
- Race Calendar and Primary Race..... 90

Training for a Race Event..... 91
Adding a Stock..... 91
Adding Weather Locations..... 91
Viewing Aviation Weather Information..... 91
Lifestyle Logging..... 92
Tracking Lifestyle Logging Behaviors..... 92
Using the Jet Lag Adviser..... 93
Planning a Trip in the Garmin Connect™ App..... 93
Viewing the Scuba Diving Glance..... 93

Clocks..... 94
Setting an Alarm..... 94
Editing an Alarm..... 94
Using the Countdown Timer..... 94
Deleting a Countdown Timer..... 95
Using the Stopwatch..... 95
Adding Alternate Time Zones..... 96
Editing an Alternate Time Zone..... 96
Adding a Countdown Event..... 96
Editing a Countdown Event..... 96

History..... 98
Using History..... 98
Multisport History..... 98
Personal Records..... 98
Viewing Your Personal Records..... 98
Restoring a Personal Record..... 98
Clearing Personal Records..... 99
Viewing Data Totals..... 99

Aviation Settings..... 100
Aviation Weather Settings..... 100
Adding Favorite Airports..... 100

Notifications and Alerts Settings.. 101
Health and Wellness Alerts..... 101
Setting an Abnormal Heart Rate Alert..... 101
Move Alert..... 101
Morning Report..... 102
Customizing Your Morning Report 102
Evening Report..... 102
Customizing Your Evening Report. 102
Setting Time Alerts..... 102
Setting a Storm Alert..... 102
Turning On Phone Connection Alerts 103

Sound and Vibration Settings..... 104

Display and Brightness Settings... 105

Connectivity..... 106
Sensors and Accessories..... 106
Wireless Sensors..... 106
Phone Connectivity Features..... 110
Pairing Your Phone..... 110
Calling from the Phone App..... 110
Using the Phone Assistant..... 110
Enabling Phone Notifications..... 111
Locating a Lost Device..... 112
Turning Off the Bluetooth® Phone Connection..... 112
Turning On and Off Find My Phone Alerts..... 112
Wi-Fi® Connectivity Features..... 112
Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network.... 113
LTE and Satellite Connected Features for D2™ Mach 2 Pro..... 113
Connecting to Communication Satellites..... 114
Sending a Test Message..... 115
Sending a Check-In Message..... 115
Checking for Messages..... 115
LTE and Satellite Settings..... 116
Viewing inReach® Plan Details and Usage..... 116
SOS for D2™ Mach 2 Pro..... 116
Garmin® Share..... 117
Sharing Data with Garmin Share... 117
Receiving Data with Garmin Share 118
Garmin Share Settings..... 118
Phone Apps and Computer Applications..... 118
Garmin Connect™..... 118
Connect IQ Features..... 120
Garmin Dive™ App..... 120
Garmin Explore™..... 121
Garmin Messenger™ App..... 121
Garmin Golf™ App..... 121

Connecting to the Garmin Pilot™ App 121

Focus Modes 123

Customizing a Default Focus Mode .. 123
Creating a Custom Focus Mode 123

Health and Wellness Settings 125

Wrist Heart Rate 125
Wearing the Watch 125
Tips for Erratic Heart Rate Data 125
Wrist Heart Rate Monitor Settings . 126
Pulse Oximeter 126
Getting Pulse Oximeter Readings .. 127
Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode .. 127
Tips for Erratic Pulse Oximeter Data 127
Auto Goal 128
Intensity Minutes 128
Earning Intensity Minutes 128
Sleep Tracking 128
Setting Your Sleep Schedule 128
Using Automated Sleep Tracking .. 128
Breathing Variations 129

Map 130

Viewing the Map 130
Saving or Navigating to a Location on the Map 130
Tracking Your Location on the Map .. 130
Map Settings 130
Managing Maps 131
Showing and Hiding Map Data 132

Navigation 133

Navigating to a Destination 133
Navigating to a Nearby Point of Interest 133
Navigating to Your Starting Point During an Activity 133
Marking and Starting Navigation to a Man Overboard Location 134
Stopping Navigation 134
Saving Locations 134
Saving Your Location 134
Saving a Dual Grid Location 134
Sharing a Location From a Map Using the Garmin Connect™ App 135
Courses 135
Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™ 135
Creating and Following a Course on Your Watch 136
Following a Saved Course on Your Watch 136
Setting the Compass Heading 137
Setting a Reference Point 137
Projecting a Waypoint 137

Safety and Tracking Features 138

Adding Assistance Contacts 138
Adding Contacts 138
Turning Incident Detection On and Off 138
Requesting Assistance 139
Spectator Messaging 139
Blocking Spectator Messages 139
Starting a GroupTrack Session 139
Tips for GroupTrack Sessions 140

Music 141

Connecting to a Third-Party Provider 141
Downloading Audio Content from a Third-Party Provider 141
Downloading Personal Audio Content 141
Listening to Music 141
Music Playback Controls 142
Connecting Bluetooth® Headphones . 142
Changing the Audio Mode 142

User Profile 143

Setting Up Your User Profile 143
Gender Settings 143
Viewing Your Fitness Age 143
About Heart Rate Zones 143
Fitness Goals 143
Setting Your Heart Rate Zones 143
Letting the Watch Set Your Heart Rate Zones 144
Heart Rate Zone Calculations 144
Setting Your Power Zones 144

Detecting Performance Measurements Automatically 145

Power Manager Settings 146

Customizing the Battery Saver Feature 146
Customizing Power Modes 146

Accessibility Settings 147

System Settings 148

Customizing the Button Shortcuts 148
Setting Your Watch Passcode 148
Changing Your Watch Passcode ... 148
Turning Off Your Watch Passcode 149
Compass 149
Compass Settings 149
Altimeter and Barometer 149
Altimeter and Barometer Settings . 150
Depth Sensor 150
Depth Sensor Settings 150
Time Settings 150
Syncing the Time 150
Changing the Default Watch Keyboard 151
Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch 151
Advanced System Settings 151
Changing the Units of Measure 151
Data Recording Settings 151
Restore and Reset Settings 151
Restoring Your Settings and Data from Garmin Connect™ 152
Resetting All Default Settings 152
Viewing Device Information 152
Viewing E-label Regulatory and Compliance Information 152

Device Information 153

About the AMOLED Display 153
Charging the Watch 153
Specifications 153
Battery Information 154
Device Care 155
Cleaning the Watch 156
Cleaning the Leather Bands 156
Changing the QuickFit® Bands 156
Metal Watch Band Adjustment 156

Troubleshooting 157

Product Updates 157
Getting More Information 157
My watch is in the wrong language ... 157
Tips for Maximizing the Battery Life . 157
Manually Restarting Your Watch 158
Fixing a Device in Recovery Mode 158
Is my phone compatible with my watch? 158
My phone will not connect to the watch 158
Can I use my Bluetooth® sensor with my watch? 159
My headphones will not connect to the watch 159
My music cuts out or my headphones won't stay connected 159
The speaker or microphone is quiet after water exposure 159
How can I undo a lap button press? .. 159
Diving 159
Resetting Your Tissue Load 159
Resetting the Surface Pressure 159
Troubleshooting for Dive Setup Sharing 160
Acquiring Satellite Signals 160
Tips for Improving GNSS Satellite Reception 161
The heart rate on my watch is not accurate 161
The activity temperature reading is not accurate 161
Exiting Demo Mode 161
Activity Tracking 161
My step count does not seem accurate 161
The step counts on my watch and my Garmin Connect™ account don't match 161
The floors climbed amount does not seem accurate 161

Appendix 163

Color Gauges and Running Dynamics Data 163

Ground Contact Time Balance Data..... 163
Vertical Oscillation and Vertical Ratio Data..... 163
VO2 Max. Standard Ratings..... 164
Running Economy Ratings..... 164
FTP Ratings.....164
Endurance Score Ratings..... 165
Wheel Size and Circumference..... 165

Data Fields..... 166

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

See the *Important Safety and Product Information* guide in the product box for product warnings and other important information.

Always consult your physician before you begin or modify any exercise program.

NOTICE

The LTE and satellite connected features, including SOS, require an active inReach® service plan, and are only available for the D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch.

Getting Started

When using your watch the first time, you should complete these tasks to set it up and get to know the basic features.

1. Hold ⌚ to turn on the watch (*Button Functions*, page 7).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the initial setup.

   During the initial setup, you can pair your phone with your watch to receive notifications, sync your activities, and more (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110). If you are upgrading from a compatible watch, you can migrate your watch settings, saved courses, and more when you pair your new D2™ Mach 2 watch with your phone.
3. If you have a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, complete the inReach® service plan activation in the Garmin Messenger™ app to use LTE and satellite connected features (*LTE and Satellite Connected Features for D2™ Mach 2 Pro*, page 113).
4. Charge the watch (*Charging the Watch*, page 153).
5. Check for software updates (*System Settings*, page 148).

   For the best experience, you should keep the software on your watch up to date. Software updates provide changes and improvements to privacy, security, and features.
6. Start an activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32).

Button Functions

TIP: You can customize some button hold functions and create new button shortcuts (*Customizing the Button Shortcuts*, page 148).

1 Upper-left button	• Press to illuminate the screen. • Quickly press twice to turn the flashlight on or off (*Using the LED Flashlight*, page 76). • Hold for three seconds to turn on the device. • Hold for two seconds to view the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74). • On a D2™ Mach 2 watch, hold for five seconds to request assistance (*Requesting Assistance*, page 139). • On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, hold for five seconds to initiate an SOS rescue (*SOS for D2™ Mach 2 Pro*, page 116).
2 Middle-left button	• From the watch face, press to view the notification center (*Viewing Notifications*, page 111). • Press to scroll through the menus or data screens. • From the watch face, hold to access the main menu. • Hold to access a contextual menu, if one is available in that part of the user interface.
3 Lower-left button	• From the watch face, press to scroll through the glances list (*Viewing Glances*, page 80). • Press to scroll through the menus or data screens. • Hold to view the music controls (*Listening to Music*, page 141).
4 Upper-right button	• Press to choose an option in a menu. • From the watch face, press to open the apps and activities menu (*Apps and Activities*, page 10). • Press to start or stop an activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32). • Hold to navigate to an airport or aviation waypoint (*Starting Direct-To Navigation*, page 36).
5 Lower-right button	• Press to return to the previous screen. • During an activity, press to record a lap, rest, or advance to the next workout step. • Hold to view a list of your recently used apps.

Touchscreen Functions

- Tap to choose an option in a menu.
- Hold to view the menu.
- Hold the watch face data to open the glance or feature.
  NOTE: This feature is not available on all watch faces.
- Tap an icon at the top of the watch face to resume using the active app or activity.
- From the watch face, swipe down to view the notification center.
- From the watch face, swipe up to scroll through the glances list.
- From the watch face, swipe left to open the apps and activities menu.
- From the controls, glances, or apps menu, hold the watch face to edit, add to, or reorder the options.
- Swipe up or down to scroll through the menus.
- Swipe right to return to the previous screen.

- Cover the screen with your palm to return to the watch face and turn down the screen brightness.

Enabling and Disabling the Touchscreen

- Hold , and select .
- Hold , select **Watch Settings** > **Display & Brightness** > **Touch**, and select an option.

Customizing the Watch Face

You can customize the watch face information and appearance, or activate an installed Connect IQ™ watch face (*Connect IQ Features*, page 120).

1. From the watch face, hold .
2. Select **Watch Face**.
3. Press or to preview the watch face options.
4. Select **Add New** to choose from additional watch face options.
5. Scroll to a watch face, press , and select .
6. Select an option:

   NOTE: Not all options are available for all watch faces.

   - To activate the watch face, select **Apply**.
   - To change the styles of fonts and graphics, select **Styles**.
   - To change the data that appears on the watch face, select **Data**, select a field to edit, and select an option.
   - To add or change an accent color for the watch face, select **Accent Color**.
   - To change the color of the data that appears on the watch face, select **Data Color**.
   - To change the color of the universal coordinated time (UTC) indicator, select **UTC Indicator Color**.
   - To change the location to use for aviation weather data, select **Weather Station**, and select a location.
   - To change the time for the digital clock, select **Digital Clock**, and select an option.

     NOTE: The analog watch hands continue to show the time from the system settings (*System Settings*, page 148).
   - To change the number of ticks per second for the second hand, select **Second Hand Update Rate**.
   - To change the time zone used for the alternate time zone pointer on the watch face, select **Alt. Time Zones**.

     NOTE: The alternate time zone pointer uses the alternate time zone you set as your favorite (*Editing an Alternate Time Zone*, page 96).
   - To remove the watch face, select **Delete**.

Apps and Activities

Your watch includes a variety of preloaded apps and activities.

Apps: Apps provide interactive features for your watch, such as viewing workouts or calling someone from your watch (*Apps*, page 10).

Activities: Your watch comes preloaded with indoor and outdoor activity apps, including running, cycling, strength training, pool swimming, and more (*Activities*, page 31). When you start an activity, the watch displays and records sensor data, which you can save and share with the Garmin Connect™ community.

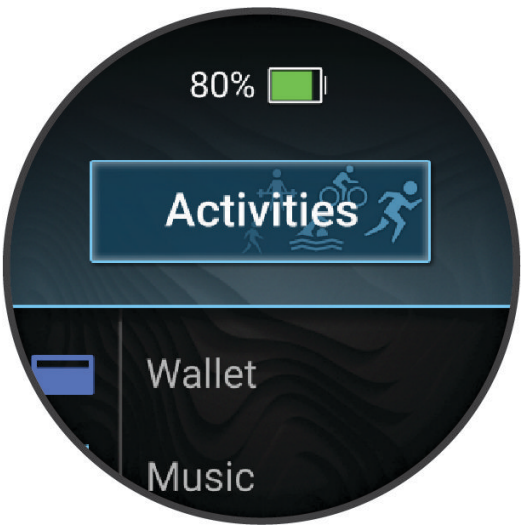
For more information about activity tracking and fitness metric accuracy, go to garmin.com/ataccuracy.

Connect IQ™ Apps: You can add features to your watch by installing apps from the Connect IQ app (*Connect IQ Features*, page 120).

Apps

You can customize your watch using the apps menu, which lets you quickly access watch features and options. Some apps require a Bluetooth® connection to a compatible phone. Many apps can also be found in the glances (*Glances*, page 78) or controls (*Controls*, page 74).

From the watch face, press ⌚, and press ⌚ to scroll through the apps.



Name	More Information
ABC	Select to view combined altimeter, barometer, and compass information.
Anchor	Select to mark an anchor location (*Marking Your Anchor Location*, page 31).
Applied Ballistics®	Select to view aiming solutions for long-range rifle shooting (*Applied Ballistics®*, page 22).
Broadcast Heart Rate	Select to broadcast heart rate data to a paired device (*Broadcasting Heart Rate Data*, page 126).
Calculator	Select to use the calculator, including the tip calculator.
Calendar	Select to view upcoming events from your phone calendar.
Clocks	Select to set an alarm, timer, stopwatch, alternate time zone, or countdown event (*Clocks*, page 94).
Connect IQ™	Select to use the Connect IQ Store on your watch (*Connect IQ Features*, page 120).
Fish Forecast	Select to display predictions for the best days and times for fishing based on your location, the moon's position, and the moon rise and set times. You can view the rating for the day and major and minor feeding times.
Garmin Share	Select to send or receive data with other Garmin® devices (*Garmin® Share*, page 117).
Health Snapshot™	Select to record several key health metrics, such as your average heart rate, stress level, and respiration rate, while you hold still for two minutes. It provides a glimpse of your overall cardiovascular status.
History	Select to view your recorded activity history, records, and totals (*Using History*, page 98).
Lifestyle Logging	Select to track your day-to-day behaviors, and see how the behaviors affect certain health metrics in the Garmin Connect™ app.

Name	More Information
Map	Select to view the map (*Viewing the Map*, page 130).
Map Manager	Select to view and manage downloaded maps (*Managing Maps*, page 131).
Messenger	Select to view and send messages using the Garmin Messenger™ phone app (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18). On a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, you can use the watch's LTE or communication satellite connection to send messages, send check-in messages, or check for new messages.
Messenger Calls	On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, select to view call history or make a voice call (*Calling from the Messenger Calls App*, page 18).
Moon Phase	Select to view the moonrise and moonset times, along with the moon phase, based on your GPS position.
Music	Select to control audio playback using your watch (*Listening to Music*, page 141).
Notifications	Select to view your phone notifications (*Viewing Notifications*, page 111).
Nutrition	Select to track your daily nutrition, including calories and macronutrients. You can also log your food intake. You must have an active Garmin Connect+ subscription to track and view your nutrition (*Garmin Connect+™ Subscription*, page 119).
Personal Minimums	Select to set and view alerts for aviation visibility and weather conditions (*Setting Personal Minimum Alerts*, page 20).
Phone	Select to open the phone controls, such as contacts and the dial pad (*Calling from the Phone App*, page 110).
Phone Assistant	Select to speak a command for your phone's voice assistant (*Using the Phone Assistant*, page 110).
Plan Dive	Select to calculate the maximum operating depth, breathing gas, or no decompression limit time for a dive (*Dive Planning*, page 29).
PLANESYNC™	Select to view avionics data from your connected aircraft (*Viewing PLANESYNC™ Data*, page 20).
Project Wpt.	Select to save a new location by projecting the distance and bearing from your current location (*Projecting a Waypoint*, page 137).
Pulse Ox	Select to take a pulse oximeter reading (*Pulse Oximeter*, page 126).
Reference Point	Select to set a reference point to provide the heading and distance to a location or bearing (*Setting a Reference Point*, page 137).
Saved	Select to view your saved locations, courses, and waypoints (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).
Settings	Select to open the settings menu.
Sports Scores	Select to track college or professional sports teams with scores and live data.
Sunrise & Sunset	Select to view sunrise, sunset, and twilight times.
Tides	Select to view tide information for a location (*Viewing Tide Information*, page 30).
Tips	Select to view interactive watch tips, learn about new features on your watch, and scan a direct link to support.garmin.com to access the owner's manual for your watch.
Trolling Motor	Select to use your watch as a remote control for a Garmin trolling motor (*Pairing Your Watch and Trolling Motor*, page 31).
Voice Command	Select to speak a command for your watch to perform (*Using Voice Commands*, page 16).
Voice Notes	Select to record a voice note (*Recording a Voice Note*, page 16).
Wallet	Select to open your Garmin Pay™ wallet (*Garmin Pay™*, page 19).
Waypoints	Select to view information about the nearest aviation waypoint, including radio frequencies, runway information, weather conditions, and navigation options (*Viewing Aviation Waypoints*, page 21).
Weather	Select to view the current weather forecast and conditions.
Weight Tracking	Select to view your recent weight trends and history. You can enter your weight manually. If you have an Index™ scale paired to your Garmin Connect account, your weight data appears in the app.

Name	More Information
Workouts	Select to view your saved workouts (*Workouts*, page 12).
Xero Chronograph	Select to access Xero® chronograph session controls and view ballistics data (*Using the Xero® Chronograph App*, page 29).

Workouts

You can create custom workouts that include goals for each workout step and for varied distances, times, and calories. During your activity, you can view workout-specific data screens that contain workout step information, such as the workout step distance or current pace.

On your watch: You can open the workouts app from the apps list to show all workouts currently loaded on your watch (*Apps and Activities*, page 10).

You can also view your workout history.

On the app: You can create and find more workouts, or select a training plan that has built-in workouts and transfer them to your watch (*Following a Workout From Garmin Connect™*, page 13).

You can schedule workouts.

You can update and edit your current workouts.

Starting a Workout

Your watch can guide you through multiple steps in a workout.

1. From the watch face, press .

   TIP: If you already have a scheduled or suggested workout for today, you can scroll down and select **Workouts**.
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Press , and select **Training**.
4. Select an option:
   - To let the watch suggest a workout after you select your intensity and time targets, select **Quick Workout**.
   - To start an interval workout, select **Targets & intervals** or **Intervals** (*Starting an Interval Workout*, page 13).
   - To start a workout with a training target, select **Targets & intervals** or **Set a Target** (*Setting a Training Target*, page 14).
   - To start a preloaded or saved workout, select **Workout Library** (*Following a Workout From Garmin Connect™*, page 13).
   - To start a scheduled workout from your Garmin Connect™ training calendar, select **Training Calendar** (*About the Training Calendar*, page 15).

   NOTE: Not all options are available for all activity types.
5. Select a workout.

   NOTE: Only workouts that are compatible with the selected activity appear in the list.
6. If necessary, select **Do Workout**.
7. Press to start the activity timer.

After you begin a workout, the device displays each step of the workout, step notes (optional), the target (optional), and the current workout data. For strength, yoga, cardio, or Pilates activities, an instructional animation appears.

Workout Execution Score

After you complete a workout, the watch displays your workout execution score based on how accurately you completed the workout. The active workout steps are prioritized the highest, measuring how closely your effort level matches the step target, and also that you completed all the steps. Warm up and recovery steps have a lower impact on your score. The cool down step does not impact your workout execution score at all.

Your workout execution score appears only for running or cycling workouts.

	Good, 67 to 100%
	Average, 34 to 66%
	Low, 0 to 33%

Following a Workout From Garmin Connect™

Before you can download a workout from Garmin Connect, you must have a Garmin Connect account (*Garmin Connect™*, page 118).

1 Select an option:
   - Open the Garmin Connect app, and select •••.
   - Go to **connect.garmin.com**.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Workouts**.
3 Find a workout, or create and save a new workout.
4 Select or **Send to Device**.
5 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Following a Daily Suggested Workout

Before the watch can suggest a daily workout, you must have a VO2 max. estimate for that activity (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Running**, and select an activity.
   - Select **Cycling**, and select an activity.
4 Press , and select the daily suggested workout.

   No suggested workout appears if you have a scheduled rest day, or are following another training plan.
5 Scroll down to view details about the workout, such as the steps and estimated benefit.
6 Scroll back up, and select an option:
   - To do the workout, select **Do Workout**.
   - To skip the workout, select **More** > **Dismiss**.
   - To view workout suggestions for the upcoming week, select **More** > **More Suggestions**.
   - To view the workout settings, such as training days, target type, and workout prompts, select **More** > **Settings**, and select an option.

     TIP: If you disable the **Workout Prompt** option, you can enable prompts again later. From the activity, select **Training** > **Workout Library** > **Daily Suggestions**, select a workout, and select **More** > **Settings** > **Workout Prompt**.

The suggested workout updates automatically to changes in training habits, recovery time, and VO2 max.

Starting an Interval Workout

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3 Scroll down.
4 Select **Training**.
5 Select an option:
   - Select **Intervals**.
   - Select **Targets & intervals** > **Intervals**.
6 Select an option:
   - Select **Open Repeats** to mark your intervals and rest periods manually by pressing .
   - Select **Structured Repeats** > **Do Workout** to use an interval workout based on distance or time.
7 If necessary, select ✔ to include a warm up before the workout.
8 Press to start the activity timer.
9 When your interval workout has a warm up, press to begin the first interval.
10 Follow the on-screen instructions.
11 At any time, press to stop the current interval or rest period and transition to the next interval or rest period (optional).

After you complete all of the intervals, a message appears.

Customizing an Interval Workout

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Press .
4. Select **Training**.
5. Select an option:
   - Select **Intervals**.
   - Select **Targets & intervals** > **Intervals**.
6. Select **Structured Repeats**.
7. Press .
8. Select **More** > **Edit Workout**.
9. Select one or more options:
   - To set the interval duration and type, select **Interval**.
   - To set the rest duration and type, select **Rest**.
   - To set the number of repetitions, select **Repeat**.
   - To add an open-ended warm up to your workout, select **Warm Up** > **On**.
10. Press .

The watch saves your custom interval workout until you edit the workout again.

Setting a Training Target

The training target feature works with the Virtual Partner® feature so you can train toward a set distance, distance and time, distance and pace, or distance and speed goal. During your training activity, the watch gives you real-time feedback about how close you are to achieving your training target.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Scroll down.
4. Select **Training**.
5. Select an option:
   - Select **Set a Target**.
   - Select **Targets & intervals**.

   NOTE: Not all options are available for all activity types.
6. Select an option:
   - Select **Distance and Time** to select a distance and time target.
   - Select **Distance and Pace** or **Distance and Speed** to select a distance and pace or speed target.
   - Select **Distance Only** to select a preset distance or enter a custom distance.
   - Select **Calories** to select a calorie target.
7. Press to start the activity timer.

Recording a Critical Swim Speed Test

Your Critical Swim Speed (CSS) value is the result of a time-trial-based test expressed as a pace per 100 meters. Your CSS is the theoretical speed you can maintain continuously without exhaustion. You can use your CSS to guide your training pace and monitor your improvement.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Swimming** > **Pool Swim**.
3. Scroll down.
4. Select **Training** > **Workout Library** > **Critical Swim Speed** > **Do Critical Swim Speed Test**.
5. Scroll down to preview the workout steps (optional).
6. Press .
7. Press to start the activity timer.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Using Virtual Partner®

The Virtual Partner feature is a training tool designed to help you meet your goals. You can set a pace for the Virtual Partner feature and race against it.

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4. Select **Data Screens** > **Add New** > **Virtual Partner**.
5. Enter a pace or speed value.

   NOTE: You can change the order of the data screens (optional).
6. Start your activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32).
7. Scroll to the Virtual Partner screen, and see who is leading.

Racing a Previous Activity

You can race the activity time from a previously recorded activity or a downloaded Garmin Connect™ course. This feature works with the Virtual Partner® feature so you can see how far ahead or behind you are during the activity.

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Scroll down.
4. Select **Training** > **Race Yourself**.
5. Select an option:
   - To race an activity, select **From History**, and select the activity.
   - To race a course, select **Downloaded**, select a course, and select **Do Course**.
6. Press ⌚ to start the activity timer.
7. After you complete your activity, press ⌚, and select **Save**.

About the Training Calendar

The training calendar on your watch is an extension of the training calendar or schedule you set up in your Garmin Connect™ account. After you have added a few workouts to the Garmin Connect calendar, you can send them to your device. All scheduled workouts sent to the device appear in the calendar glance. When you select a day in the calendar, you can view or do the workout. The scheduled workout stays on your watch whether you complete it or skip it. When you send scheduled workouts from Garmin Connect, they overwrite the existing training calendar.

Adaptive Training Plans

Your Garmin Connect™ account has an adaptive training plan and Garmin® coach to fit your training goals. For example, you can answer a few questions and find a plan to help you complete a 5 km race. The plan adjusts to your current level of fitness, coaching and schedule preferences, and race date. When you start a plan, the Garmin coach glance is added to the glances list on your D2™ Mach 2 watch.

Using the Saved App

You can use the saved app to view your saved locations and courses.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Saved**.
3. Select a saved item.
4. Select an option:
   - To navigate to the location, select **Go To**.
   - To navigate the course, select **Do Course**.
   - To view course points, such as water stops, obstacles, or steep climbs, select **View Course Points**.

     TIP: You can add course points when you create a course on the Garmin Connect™ app (*Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™*, page 135).
   - To navigate the course in reverse, select **More** > **Do Course in Reverse**.
   - To edit the routing settings, such as avoidances and guidance alerts, select **More** > **Route Settings**.

- To view location details, select **More** > **Details**.
- To edit the location or course details, select **More** > **Edit**.
- To edit the alerts that appear while navigating, select **More** > **Alert Settings**.
- To view a list of ascents in the course, select **More** > **View Climbs**.
- To show the course on the map, even when you are not navigating, select **More** > **Show on Map**.
- To share the location or course with the **Garmin Share** feature, select **More** > **Share** (*Garmin® Share*, page 117).
- To delete the location or course, select **More** > **Delete**.

Recording a Voice Note

You can record and listen to voice notes using your watch's built-in speaker and microphone.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .
2 Select **Voice Notes**.
3 Select .
4 Select an option:
   - Select **Location** to save your GPS location with the voice note.
   - Select **Volume** to adjust the speaker volume.
5 Select .
6 Say your voice note.
7 Select .
8 Select an option:
   - Select to play the voice note.
   - Select to rename or delete the voice note.
   - Select to view the voice note location on the map.
   - Press , and select to view your voice note library.

Using Voice Commands

1 Select an option:
   - Hold and .
   - From the watch face, press , and select **Voice Command**.
   - Hold , and select **Voice Command**.
     NOTE: You can customize the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).
   - Say **"OK Garmin"**.
     NOTE: You can enable the **"OK Garmin"** watch wake word in the system settings (*Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch*, page 151).
2 Say a voice command for the watch to perform (*Watch Voice Commands*, page 16).

Watch Voice Commands

The voice command system is designed to detect natural speech. This is a list of commonly used voice commands, but the watch does not require these exact phrases (other than *OK Garmin*). You can try saying variations of these commands in a way that is natural to you. Go to garmin.com/voicecommand/tips for voice command tips and troubleshooting information.

Voice Wake Word	Function
"OK Garmin"	Wakes up the watch to listen for voice commands

Voice Help Command	Function
What can I say?	Shows a list of common voice commands

Device and Screen Functions

Voice Command	Function
Find my phone	Plays an audible alert on your paired phone, if it is within Bluetooth® range.
Disable do not disturb	Disables do not disturb mode to dim the screen and disable alerts and notifications.
Turn on airplane mode	Enables airplane mode to turn off all wireless communications.
Increase brightness	Raises the brightness level.
Decrease brightness	Lowers the brightness level.
Set brightness to 80	Sets the brightness level to a specified percent. Available numbers are 0-100%.

Clock Functions

Voice Command	Function
Set a timer for fifteen minutes	Sets a countdown timer for the specified time.
Pause timer	Pauses the currently running countdown timer.
Resume timer	Resumes the paused countdown timer.
Cancel timer	Cancels the currently running countdown timer.
Start stopwatch	Starts the stopwatch.
Stop stopwatch	Stops the stopwatch.
Wake me up at 3:15 a.m.	Sets a one-time alarm for the specified time.

App and Activity Functions

Voice Command	Function
Show me the weather	Opens the weather app.
Open the calendar	Opens the calendar app.
Start a run	Starts a Run activity.
Start hiking	Starts a Hike activity.
Open the triathlon app	Starts a Triathlon activity.
Fly to {airport identifier}	Starts a Fly activity and begins navigation to the airport. Use the NATO designation when you speak the airport identifier.
Show the METAR at {airport identifier}	Opens the weather app and shows the METAR information for the airport. Use the NATO designation when you speak the airport identifier.

NOTE: The apps and activities listed are examples, but you can control all of the default apps and activities with voice commands (*Apps*, page 10, *Activities*, page 31).

Navigation Functions

Voice Command	Function
Begin navigation	Opens the Navigate menu to navigate to a destination.
Save location	Saves your current location.
Switch to the compass app	Opens the compass.

Media Functions

Voice Command	Function
Change volume to 8	Adjusts the volume to the specified level. Available numbers are 0-10 or 0-100%.
Increase volume	Raises the audio volume.
Decrease volume	Lowers the audio volume.
Play music	Plays the currently selected media.
Next song	Plays the next media track.
Previous song	Plays the previous media track.
Pause music	Pauses the currently playing media.

Voice Command	Function
Mute	Silences all audio.
Unmute	Unsilences all audio.

Using the Messenger App

⚠ CAUTION

The non-satellite messaging features of the Garmin Messenger™ app on your phone should not be solely relied upon as a primary method to obtain emergency assistance.

NOTICE

To use the Messenger app, your D2™ Mach 2 or D2 Mach 2 Pro watch without an active inReach® service plan must be connected to the Garmin Messenger app on your compatible phone using Bluetooth® technology (*Garmin Messenger™ App*, page 121).

The Messenger app on your watch allows you to view, compose, and reply to messages from the Garmin Messenger app on your phone. On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, you can use the watch's LTE or satellite connection to send custom messages, send check-in messages, or check for new messages.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .
2 Select **Messenger**.
3 If this is your first time using the **Messenger** feature, scan the QR code with your phone, and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing and setup process.
4 On your watch, select an option:
   - To compose a new message, select , select a recipient, and either select a message from the list or compose your own.

     TIP: On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, you can select to record a voice message.
   - To send a check-in message on a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, select .
   - To check for new messages on a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, select .
   - To view a conversation, scroll down, and select a conversation.
   - To reply to a message, select a conversation, select **Reply**, and either select a message from the list or compose your own.
   - On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, select **Send My Location** to send a message with your location.

     TIP: You can select **More** > **Include Location** for more options to include your location with your messages.

Calling from the Messenger Calls App

NOTICE

This feature is only available on a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch.

On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, if your paired phone is connected and in range, the call is made using the phone's LTE connection. If your phone is not connected, the call is made using the watch's LTE connection. On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch without an active inReach service plan, your paired phone must be connected and in range to make a voice call.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press , and select **Messenger Calls**.
   - Hold , and select **Messenger Calls**.
2 Select an option:
   - To call a contact from the Garmin Messenger™ app contacts list on your phone, select , and select a contact name.
   - To call a recent **Messenger Calls** contact, scroll down, and select a contact name.
3 Wait while the call connects.
4 Swipe up for call options.

5 Select an option:
   - To mute the watch microphone, select 🎙.
   - To adjust the watch speaker volume, select 🔊.
   - To send a text message through the **Messenger** app, select 💬.
   - To change the audio source from the watch to your connected headphones, select 🔊.
   - To transfer the call from your watch to your connected phone, select ⇲.
6 Select ☎ to end the call.

Garmin Pay™

The Garmin Pay feature allows you to use your watch to pay for purchases in participating locations using credit or debit cards from a participating financial institution.

Setting Up Your Garmin Pay™ Wallet

You can add one or more participating credit or debit cards to your Garmin Pay wallet. Go to garmin.com/garminpay/banks to find participating financial institutions.

1 From the Garmin Connect™ app, select •••.
2 Select **Wallet & Garmin Pay** > **Get Started**.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Paying for a Purchase Using Your Watch

Before you can use your watch to pay for purchases, you must set up at least one payment card.

You can use your watch to pay for purchases in a participating location.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press ⌚.
   - Hold ⌚.
2 Select **Wallet**.
3 Enter your four-digit passcode.
   NOTE: If you enter your passcode incorrectly three times, your wallet locks, and you must reset your passcode in the Garmin Connect™ app.
   Your most recently used payment card appears.
4 If you have added multiple cards to your Garmin Pay™ wallet, press ⌚ to change to another card (optional).
5 Within 60 seconds, hold your watch near the payment reader, with the watch facing the reader.
   The watch vibrates and displays a check mark when it is finished communicating with the reader.
6 If necessary, follow the instructions on the card reader to complete the transaction.

TIP: After you successfully enter your passcode, you can make payments without a passcode for 24 hours while you continue to wear your watch. If you remove the watch from your wrist or disable heart rate monitoring, you must enter the passcode again before making a payment.

Adding a Card to Your Garmin Pay™ Wallet

You can add up to 10 credit or debit cards to your Garmin Pay wallet.

1 From the Garmin Connect™ app, select ••• > **Wallet & Garmin Pay** > ➕.
2 Follow the on-screen instructions.

After the card is added, you can select the card on your watch when you make a payment.

Managing Your Garmin Pay™ Cards

You can temporarily suspend or delete a card.

NOTE: In some countries, participating financial institutions may restrict the Garmin Pay features.

1 From the Garmin Connect™ app, select ••• > **Wallet & Garmin Pay**.
2 Select a card.
3 Select ⋮.
4 Select an option:
   - To temporarily suspend or unsuspend the card, select **Suspend Card**.
     The card must be active to make purchases using your D2™ Mach 2 watch.
   - To delete the card, select 🗑 or **Remove Card**.

Changing Your Garmin Pay™ Passcode

You must know your current passcode to change it. If you forget your passcode, you must reset the Garmin Pay feature for your D2™ Mach 2 watch, create a new passcode, and reenter your card information.

1 From the Garmin Connect™ app, select •••.
2 Select **Wallet & Garmin Pay** > **Change Passcode**.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

The next time you pay using your D2 Mach 2 watch, you must enter the new passcode.

Setting Personal Minimum Alerts

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

⚠ WARNING

This feature allows users to view weather data and set alerts for information that is provided and maintained by third parties. Garmin® makes no representations about the accuracy, reliability, completeness, or timeliness of weather data provided by third parties. It is your responsibility to review weather reports and conditions, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment, especially during times of potential severe weather.

You can set personal aviation visibility and weather condition threshold values, and create custom aviation alerts based on your thresholds.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press .
   - From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Personal Minimums** > **My Minimums**.
3 Select an option, and enter a threshold value.
4 Press .
5 Select **Alerts**.
6 Select an option:
   - Select the nearest airport from the list, and select **Add Alert**.
   - Select **Add Airport**, and select an airport.
7 Select an alert type.
   The alert threshold value populates with the value you set for My Minimums, if available. If you have not set a personal minimum value, you can enter one.
8 If necessary, edit the threshold value or sound and vibration options.
9 Select **Save Alert**.
10 Select **Add Alert** to add additional alerts for the airport, and repeat steps 7 through 9 (optional).

Viewing PLANESYNC™ Data

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

When you connect your watch, a compatible GDL® 60 datalink, and an aircraft with an active PLANESYNC subscription to your flyGarmin.com account, you can remotely view the aircraft status on your watch. Go to garmin.com for more information about compatible devices.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press .
   - From the watch face, press .

   NOTE: You can customize the app list (*Customizing the App List*, page 66) and glance list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select **PlaneSync**.

3 Select an option:
- Scroll down to view the aircraft status, location, and sensor data.
- Press ⌚, and select **Sync with Aircraft** to refresh the connection to the aircraft.
- Press ⌚, and select **Airport Info** to view more details about the airport (*Viewing Aviation Waypoints*, page 21).
- Press ⌚, and select **Show on Map** to view the aircraft location on the map.

Viewing Aviation Waypoints

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

⚠ WARNING

This feature allows users to view weather data and set alerts for information that is provided and maintained by third parties. Garmin® makes no representations about the accuracy, reliability, completeness, or timeliness of weather data provided by third parties. It is your responsibility to review weather reports and conditions, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment, especially during times of potential severe weather.

1 Select an option:
- From the watch face, scroll to view the waypoints glance, and select the glance.
  NOTE: You may need to add the glance to your glance list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
- From the watch face, press ⌚, and select **Waypoints**.
  NOTE: You may need to add the app to your app list (*Customizing the App List*, page 66).

2 Scroll down to view information about the nearest aviation waypoint, such as frequencies, runway information, and weather data.
  TIP: You can select a category to view more details.

3 Swipe left, and select an option:
- To view the waypoint on the map, select **Show on Map**.
- To navigate to the waypoint, select **Direct-To**.
- To set weather alerts for the waypoint, select **Alerts** > **Weather Alerts**, and select an option.
- To set personal minimum alerts for the waypoints, select **Alerts** > **Personal Minimums**, and select an option (*Setting Personal Minimum Alerts*, page 20).
- To add the waypoint to your favorite airport list, select **Add to Favorites**.
- To view a different waypoint, select **Search Waypoints**, and select an option.
- To change the default waypoint, select **Pinned Airport**, and select an option.

Applied Ballistics®

⚠ WARNING

The Applied Ballistics feature is intended to provide accurate elevation and windage solutions based on gun and bullet profiles and measurements of current conditions only. Depending on your environment, conditions may change rapidly. Changes in environmental conditions, like wind gusts or downrange winds, may have an effect on the accuracy of your shot. Elevation and windage solutions are suggestions only based upon your input into the feature. Take readings often and carefully, and allow the readings to stabilize after significant changes in environmental conditions. Always allow a margin of safety for changing conditions and reading errors.

Always understand your target and what lies beyond your target before taking a shot. Failure to account for your shooting environment could cause property damage, injury, or death.

The Applied Ballistics feature offers customized aiming solutions for long-range shooting based on your rifle characteristics, bullet characteristics, and various environmental conditions. You can enter parameters including wind, temperature, humidity, range, and firing direction.

This feature provides the information you need to fire long-range projectiles, including elevation holdover, windage, and time of flight. It also includes custom drag models for your bullet type. Go to appliedballisticsllc.com for more details about this feature. See the *Applied Ballistics® Glossary of Terms*, page 25 for descriptions of the terms and data fields.

NOTE: You may need to upgrade the ballistic solver in the Applied Ballistics Quantum™ app to unlock all Applied Ballistics features (*Applied Ballistics Quantum™ App*, page 22).

Applied Ballistics Quantum™ App

The Applied Ballistics Quantum app allows you to manage ballistic profiles on your D2™ device, or upgrade your ballistic solver, if necessary. You can download the Applied Ballistics Quantum app from the app store on your phone.

Applied Ballistics® Options

From the watch face, press ◯, select **Applied Ballistics**, and press ◯.

Quick Edit: Sets the range, direction of fire, and wind information (*Quickly Editing Shooting Conditions*, page 22).

Range Card: Displays data for various ranges based on user input parameters. You can change fields (*Customizing the Range Card Fields*, page 23), edit the range increment (*Editing the Range Increment*, page 23), and set the base range (*Setting the Base Range*, page 23).

Target Card: Sets the long-range shooting conditions for your current target, including range, elevation, and windage (*Editing the Target*, page 23). You can change the selected target and customize conditions for up to 26 targets (*Changing the Target*, page 23).

Environment: Sets the atmospheric conditions for your current environment. You can enter custom values, use the pressure and latitude values from the internal sensor in the device, or values from a connected wireless sensor (*Environment*, page 24).

Profile: Sets the bullet, gun, and scope properties for your current profile (*Editing a Profile*, page 24). You can change the selected profile (*Selecting a Different Profile*, page 25) and add additional profiles (*Adding a Profile*, page 24).

Change Fields: Customizes the data fields on the profile data screen (*Customizing the Profile Data Screen*, page 25).

Garmin LRF Settings: Updates Applied Ballistics data, such as target and environment data, on your device each time you range a target using your paired Xero® rangefinder (*Updating Applied Ballistics® Data Using a Xero® Rangefinder*, page 25).

Settings: Sets the units of measure, decimal place precision, target labels, and fire control options for windage and elevation.

Quickly Editing Shooting Conditions

You can edit the range, direction of fire, and wind information.

1. From the Applied Ballistics® app, press ◯.
2. Select **Quick Edit**.

   TIP: You can press ◯ or ◯ to edit each value, and press ◯ to move to the next field.
3. Set the **RNG** value to the target distance.
4. Set the **DOF** value to your actual direction of fire.

TIP: To use the compass to set the direction of fire, you can press , then point the top of the device toward the target, and press to select the current compass value.

5 Set the **W 1** value to the low wind speed.
6 Set the **W 2** value to the high wind speed.
7 Set the **DIR** value to the direction the wind is coming from.
8 Press to save your settings.

Range Card

Customizing the Range Card Fields

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Range Card**.
3 Press , and select **Change Fields**.
4 Press or to change the field.
5 Press to select the field to customize.
6 Select a field.
7 Press to save your changes.

Editing the Range Increment

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Range Card**.
3 Press , and select **Range Increment**.
4 Enter a value.

Setting the Base Range

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Range Card**.
3 Press , and select **Base Range**.
4 Enter a value.

Target Card

Adding a Target

You can add up to 26 targets.

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Target Card** > **Add**.
The new target appears at the bottom of the list.

Editing the Target

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Target Card**.
3 Select a target.
4 Select an option to edit.

Changing the Target

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Target Card**.
3 Select a target.
4 Select **Set as current**.

Setting the Target Location Using GPS

1 While at the target location, hold , and select **Save Location**.
2 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
3 Save the target location.

4 Go to the firing location.
5 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
6 Select **Target Card**.
7 Select a target.
8 Select **Use Saved Location Data**.
9 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
10 Select the target location.

Environment

Editing the Environment

1 From the Applied Ballistics app, press .
2 Select **Environment**.
3 Select an option to edit.

Enabling Auto Update

You can use the auto update feature to update the latitude and pressure values automatically. When connected to a wireless sensor, such as a temperature sensor or weather meter, the other environment fields also update (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107). The values update every minute.

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Environment** > **Auto Update** > **On**.

Profile

Adding a Profile

You can add a .pro file that contains profile information by creating it using the Applied Ballistics Quantum™ app and transferring the file to the AB folder on the device. You can also create a profile using your Garmin® device.

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Profile**.
3 Select an option:
   - To create a brand new profile, select **+ Profile**
   - To create a new profile based on an existing profile, select the profile, select **Copy**, and enter a name.

Editing a Profile

1 From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2 Select **Profile**.
3 Select a profile.
4 If necessary, select **Rename**, and enter a name.
5 Select **Properties**.
6 Select an option:

   NOTE: Some options only appear when you enable the Advanced Settings option.

   - To enter the bullet properties, select **Bullet Data**, and select an option.

     TIP: You can select **Bullet Library** to automatically enter bullet properties from the Applied Ballistics bullet database. If you manually enter the bullet properties, you can find the information on the bullet manufacturer's website.
   - To enter the gun properties, select **Gun Data**, and select an option.
   - To enter the scope properties, select **Scope**, and select an option.
   - To calibrate the muzzle velocity to provide a more accurate solution in the supersonic range for your firearm, select **Calibrate Muzzle Velocity**, select an option, and select **Apply**.
   - To calibrate the custom drag factor, select **Calibrate Custom Drag Factor**, select an option, and select **Apply**.
   - To edit the muzzle velocity temperature table, select **MV Temp Table**, press , select **Edit**, and select a value to edit.

     NOTE: If necessary, you can select **Clear MV-Temp** to reset the muzzle velocity temperature table back to the default values.
   - To calibrate the drop scale factor to provide a more accurate solution at or beyond the transonic range for your firearm, select **Drop Scale Factor** > **Calibrate DSF**, select an option, and select **Apply**.

NOTE: Garmin® recommends you calibrate the muzzle velocity prior to the drop scale factor. After you calibrate the drop scale factor, you can select **View DSF Table** to view the drop scale factor table. If necessary, you can select **Clear DSF Table** to reset the drop scale factor table to the default values.

Deleting a Profile

NOTE: You cannot delete your current profile.

1. From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2. Select **Profile**.
3. Select a profile.
4. Select **Delete**.

Selecting a Different Profile

1. From the Applied Ballistics® app, press .
2. Select **Profile**.
3. Select a profile.
4. Select **Set as current**.

Customizing the Profile Data Screen

1. During an Applied Ballistics® activity, press to scroll to the profile data screen.
2. Press , and select **Change Fields**.
3. Press or to scroll to a field.
4. Press to select the field to change.
5. Press or to scroll through the fields.
6. Select a field.
7. Press to save your changes.

Updating Applied Ballistics® Data Using a Xero® Rangefinder

Before you can update the Applied Ballistics data, you must pair a compatible Xero rangefinder (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

You can choose what Applied Ballistics data updates on your watch each time you range a target using your rangefinder.

1. From the Applied Ballistics app, press .
2. Select **Settings** > **Garmin LRF Settings**.
3. Select an option:
   - Select **Target** to update range, direction of fire, and inclination.
   - Select **Target + Environment** to update the target data, plus temperature, pressure, and humidity.
   - Select **Target + Environment + Wind** to update the target and environment data, plus wind speed 1, wind speed 2, and wind direction.

Applied Ballistics® Glossary of Terms

Quick Edit Fields

DIR: The direction from which the wind is coming. For example, a 9:00 wind blows from your left to your right. Input field.

DOF: The direction of fire, with north at 0 degrees and east at 90 degrees. Input field.

Elevation: The vertical portion of the aiming solution, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

RNG: The distance to the target, displayed in yards or meters. Input field.

W 1: The wind speed used in the shooting solution, displayed in miles per hour (mph), kilometers per hour (km/h), or meters per second (m/s). Input field.

W 2: An optional, additional wind speed used in the shooting solution, displayed in miles per hour (mph), kilometers per hour (km/h), or meters per second (m/s). Input field.

TIP: You can use two wind speeds to calculate a windage solution that contains a high and low value. The actual windage to apply for the shot should fall in this range. Using both wind speed 1 and wind speed 2 is not an effective way to account for different wind speeds at different distances between you and the target.

Windage 1: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 1 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Windage 2: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 2 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Range Card Fields

Bullet Drop: The total drop the bullet experiences along its flight path, displayed in inches or centimeters.

Elevation: The vertical portion of the aiming solution, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

H. Cor. Effect: The horizontal Coriolis effect. The horizontal Coriolis effect is the amount of the windage solution attributed to the Coriolis effect. This is always calculated by the device, although the impact may be minimal if you are not shooting at extended range.

Lead: The horizontal correction needed to hit a target moving left or right at a given speed.

TIP: When you enter the speed of your target, the device factors the necessary windage required into the total windage value.

Remaining Energy: The remaining energy of the bullet at target impact, displayed in foot-pounds of force (ft. lbf) or joules (J).

Spin Drift: The amount of the windage solution attributed to the spin drift (gyroscopic drift). For example, in the northern hemisphere, a bullet shot out of a right-hand twist barrel will always deflect slightly to the right as it travels.

Time of Flight: The time of flight, which indicates the time required for a bullet to reach its target at a given range.

V. Cor. Effect: The vertical Coriolis effect. The vertical Coriolis effect is the amount of the elevation solution attributed to the Coriolis effect. This is always calculated by the device, although the impact may be minimal if you are not shooting at extended range.

Velocity: The estimated velocity of the bullet when it impacts the target.

Velocity Mach: The estimated velocity of the bullet when it impacts the target, displayed as a factor of mach speed.

Windage 1: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 1 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Windage 2: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 2 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Target Card Fields

Direction of Fire: The direction of fire, with north at 0 degrees and east at 90 degrees. Input field.

TIP: You can use the compass to set this value by pointing the top of the device toward the direction of fire. The current compass value appears in the DOF field. You can press to use this value.

Inclination: The angle of inclination of the shot. A negative value indicates a downhill shot. A positive values indicates an uphill shot. The shooting solution multiplies the vertical portion of the solution by the cosine of the inclination angle to calculate the adjusted solution for an uphill or downhill shot. Input field.

Range: The distance to the target, displayed in yards or meters. Input field.

Speed: The speed of a moving target, displayed in miles per hour (mph), kilometers per hour (km/h), or meters per second (m/s). A negative value indicates a target moving left. A positive value indicates a target moving right. Input field.

Environment Fields

Direction: The direction from which the wind is coming. For example, a 9:00 wind blows from your left to your right. Input field.

Humidity: The percentage of moisture in the air. Input field.

Latitude: The horizontal location on the Earth's surface. Negative values are below the equator. Positive values are above the equator. This value is used to calculate the vertical and horizontal Coriolis drift. Input field.

TIP: You can select the Use Current Position option to use the GPS coordinates from your device.

NOTE: The Latitude is used only for calculating the Coriolis effect. If you are shooting at a target less than 1,000 yards away, this input field is optional.

Pressure: The ambient (station) pressure. Ambient pressure is not adjusted to represent sea level (barometric) pressure. Ambient pressure is required for the ballistics shooting solution. Input field.

TIP: You can manually enter this value, or you can select the Use Current Pressure option to use the pressure value from the internal sensor in the device.

Temperature: The temperature at your current location, displayed in Fahrenheit (F) or Celsius (C). Input field.

TIP: You can manually enter the temperature reading from a connected tempe™ sensor or other temperature source. This field does not automatically update when connected to a tempe sensor.

Wind Direction Mode: Sets the wind direction setting (Direction) relative to your direction of fire (Relative to DOF) or relative to true north (True Wind Dir).

NOTE: When you are engaging multiple targets at different DOFs, the True Wind Dir option is useful because you only have to adjust your DOF, and your wind direction remains the same.

Wind Speed 1: The wind speed used in the shooting solution, displayed in miles per hour (mph), kilometers per hour (km/h), or meters per second (m/s). Input field.

Wind Speed 2: An optional, additional wind speed used in the shooting solution, displayed in miles per hour (mph), kilometers per hour (km/h), or meters per second (m/s). Input field.

TIP: You can use two wind speeds to calculate a windage solution that contains a high and low value. The actual windage to apply for the shot should fall in this range.

Profile Fields - Bullet Data

Ballistic Coefficient: The manufacturer's ballistic coefficient for your bullet. Input field.

Diameter: The bullet diameter, displayed in inches or centimeters. Input field.

NOTE: The diameter of the bullet may vary from the common name of the round. For example, a 300 Win Mag is actually .308 inches in diameter.

Length: The length of the bullet, displayed in inches or centimeters. Input field.

Model: The G1 or G7 standard projectile models for drag curve. Input field.

NOTE: Most long range rifle bullets are closer to the G7 standard.

Weight: The bullet weight, displayed in grains (gr) or grams (g). Input field.

Profile Fields - Gun Data

Muzzle Velocity: The speed of the bullet as it leaves the muzzle, displayed in feet per second (f/s) or meters per second (m/s). Input field.

NOTE: This field is required for accurate calculations by the shooting solution. If you calibrate the muzzle velocity, this field may be updated automatically for a more accurate firing solution.

Sight Height: The distance from the center axis of the rifle barrel to the center axis of the scope, displayed in inches or centimeters. Input field.

TIP: You can easily determine this value by measuring from the top of the bolt to the center of the windage turret, and adding half of the diameter of the bolt.

Twist Direction: The direction that the rifling of your barrel spirals. Most rifles have a right-handed twist. Input field.

Twist Rate: The distance it takes for the rifling of your barrel to make one full rotation, displayed in inches or centimeters. Rifle twist is often provided by the gun or barrel manufacturer. Input field.

Zero Range: The range at which the rifle was zeroed, displayed in yards or meters. Input field.

Profile Fields - Scope

Scope Units: The units of measure for your scope, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA). Input field.

Sight in Condition: The environmental conditions while sighting in your gun. These are optional modifications recommended when sighting in your gun 300 yards and beyond. Toggle field.

SSF Elevation: A linear multiplier that accounts for vertical scaling. Not all rifle scopes track perfectly, so the ballistics solution requires a correction to scale according to a particular rifle scope. For example, if a turret is moved 10 mil but the impact is 9 mil, the sight scale is 0.9. Input field.

SSF Windage: A linear multiplier that accounts for horizontal scaling. Not all rifle scopes track perfectly, so the ballistics solution requires a correction to scale according to a particular rifle scope. For example, if a turret is moved 10 mil but the impact is 9 mil, the sight scale is 0.9. Input field.

Zero Height: An optional modification to impact elevation at zero range. This is often used when adding a suppressor or using a subsonic load. For example, if you add a suppressor and your bullet impacts the target 1 inch higher than expected, your Zero Height is 1 inch. You must set this to zero when you remove the suppressor. Input field.

Zero Humidity: The humidity while sighting in your gun. This is an optional modification recommended when sighting in your gun at 300 yards and beyond. Input field.

Zero Offset: An optional modification to impact windage at zero range. This is often used when adding a suppressor or using a subsonic load. For example, if you add a suppressor and your bullet impacts the target

1 inch to the left of the expected impact, your Zero Offset is -1 inch. You must set this to zero when you remove the suppressor. Input field.

Zero Pressure: The ambient pressure while sighting in your gun. This is an optional modification recommended when sighting in your gun at 300 yards and beyond. Input field.

Zero Temperature: The temperature while sighting in your gun. This is an optional modification recommended when sighting in your gun at 300 yards and beyond. Input field.

Profile Fields - Calibrate Muzzle Velocity

Range: The distance from the muzzle to the target, displayed in yards or meters. Input field.

TIP: You should enter a value as close as possible to the range suggested in the shooting solution. This is the range where the bullet slows to Mach 1.2 and begins to enter the transonic range.

True Drop: The actual distance the bullet falls while in flight to the target, displayed in milliradians (mrad/mil) or minute of angle (MOA). Input field.

Profile Fields - Calibrate Custom Drag Factor

Range: The range from which you are shooting. Input field.

TIP: In most cases, the calibrated custom drag factor should not exceed a 10% correction.

True Drop: The actual distance the bullet falls when fired at a specific range, displayed in milliradians (mrad/mil) or minute of angle (MOA). Input field.

Profile Fields - Calibrate Drop Scale Factor

Range: The range from which you are shooting. Input field.

TIP: This range should be within 90% of the recommended range suggested in the shooting solution. Values that are less than 80% of the recommended range will not provide a valid adjustment.

True Drop: The actual distance the bullet falls when fired at a specific range, displayed in milliradians (mrad/mil) or minute of angle (MOA). Input field.

Profile Data Screen Fields

Aero. Jump. Effect: The amount of the elevation solution attributed to aerodynamic jump. Aerodynamic jump is the vertical deflection of the bullet due to a crosswind. Aerodynamic jump is calculated based on the wind speed 1 value. If there is no crosswind component or wind value, this value is zero.

Bullet Drop: The total drop the bullet experiences along its flight path.

Cos. Incl. Ang.: The cosine of the inclination angle to the target.

Elevation: The vertical portion of the aiming solution, displayed in milliradians (mrad/mil) or minute of angle (MOA).

H. Cor. Effect: The horizontal Coriolis effect. The horizontal Coriolis effect is the amount of the windage solution attributed to the Coriolis effect. This is always calculated by the device, although the impact may be minimal if you are not shooting at extended range.

Lead: The horizontal correction needed to hit a target moving left or right at a given speed.

TIP: When you enter the speed of your target, the device factors the necessary windage required into the total windage value.

Max. Ord.: The maximum ordinance, displayed in inches or centimeters. The maximum ordinance is the maximum height above the axis of the barrel that a bullet will reach along its flight path.

Max. Ord. Range: The range at which the bullet will reach its maximum ordinance, displayed in yards or meters.

Remaining Energy: The remaining energy of the bullet at target impact, displayed in foot-pounds of force (ft. lbf) or joules (J).

Spin Drift: The amount of the windage solution attributed to the spin drift (gyroscopic drift). For example, in the northern hemisphere, a bullet shot out of a right-hand twist barrel will always deflect slightly to the right as it travels.

Time of Flight: The time of flight, which indicates the time required for a bullet to reach its target at a given range.

V. Cor. Effect: The vertical Coriolis effect. The vertical Coriolis effect is the amount of the elevation solution attributed to the Coriolis effect. This is always calculated by the device, although the impact may be minimal if you are not shooting at extended range.

Velocity: The estimated velocity of the bullet when it impacts the target, displayed in feet per second (f/s) or meters per second (m/s).

Velocity Mach: The estimated velocity of the bullet when it impacts the target, displayed as a factor of mach speed.

Windage 1: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 1 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Windage 2: The horizontal portion of the aiming solution based on the wind speed 2 and wind direction, displayed in inches, milliradians (mrad/mil), or minute of angle (MOA).

Using the Xero® Chronograph App

You can use your watch to view ballistics data during a Xero chronograph session and access session controls. See your chronograph manual for more information about compatibility and how to use the chronograph.

1. Pair your watch and Xero chronograph (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).
2. From the watch face, press .
3. Select **Xero Chronograph**.
4. Wait while the watch and chronograph connect.
5. Select an option:
   - On your watch, press , and select **New Session**.
   - On your Xero chronograph, start a new session.
6. On either device, follow the on-screen instructions to select the weapon mode and weapon details.
7. During the session, use your watch to select an option:
   - Press to view the shot list.
   - Press to view the options menu.

Dive Planning

You can plan for future dives using your dive computer, such as calculating your breathing gas or no-decompression limit (NDL) times.

Calculating NDL Time

You can calculate the no-decompression limit (NDL) time or maximum depth for a future dive. These calculations are not saved or applied to your next dive.

1. Press .
2. Select **Plan Dive** > **Compute NDL**.
3. Select an option:
   - To calculate NDL based on your current tissue load, select **Diving Now**.
   - To calculate NDL based on your tissue load at a future time, select **Enter Surf. Interval**, and enter your surface interval time.
4. Enter an oxygen percentage.
5. Select an option:
   - To calculate the NDL time, select **Enter Depth**, and enter the planned depth for your dive.
   - To calculate the maximum depth, select **Enter Time**, and enter your planned dive time.

   The NDL countdown clock, depth, and maximum operating depth (MOD) appear.

   NOTE: If the planned depth exceeds the MOD of the dive computer or the breathing gas, a warning message appears, and the gas MOD appears in red.
6. Press .
7. Select an option:
   - To exit, select **Done**.
   - To add intervals to your dive, select **Add Repeat Dive**, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Calculating Your Breathing Gas

You can calculate the PO2 value, oxygen percentage, or maximum depth for a dive by adjusting two of the three values. The calculations are affected by the water type setting in the dive settings (*Dive Settings*, page 57).

1. Press .
2. Select **Plan Dive** > **Calculate Gas**.
3. Press or , and select an option to calculate:
   - Select **PO2**.
   - Select **O2%**.
   - Select **Depth**.

4 Press ◦ or ◦ to edit the first value.

5 Press ◦, then press ◦ or ◦ to edit the second value.
As you edit the values, the device calculates an adjusted value for the highlighted option.

6 If necessary, press ◦ to calculate the value for a different option.

Viewing Tide Information

⚠ WARNING

Tide information is for information purposes only. It is your responsibility to heed all posted water-related guidance, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment in, on, and around the water at all times. Failure to heed this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

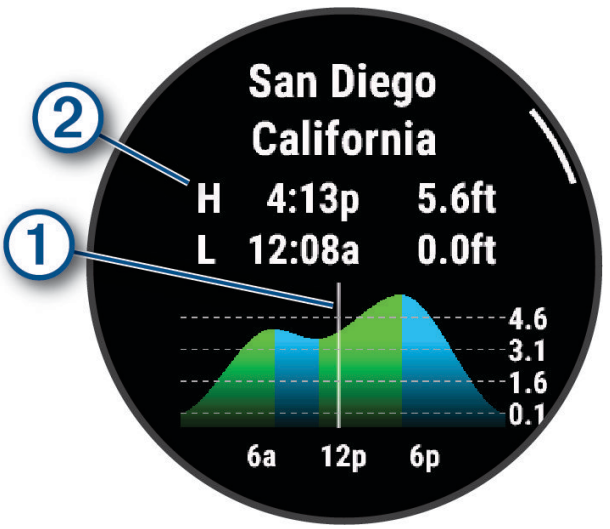
You can view information about a tide station, including the tide height and when the next high and low tides will occur. You can save up to ten tide stations.

1 Select an option:
- From the watch face, press ◦.
- From the watch face, press ◦.

2 Select **Tides**.

3 Select an option:
- To use your current location when you are near a tide station, select **Current Location**.
- To enter coordinates for a location, select **Coordinates**.
- To select a location on the map, select **Use Map**.
- To select a saved location, select **Saved Locations**.
- To enter the name of a city, select **City Search**.

A 24-hour tide chart appears for the current date with the current tide height ① and information about the next high and low tides ②.



4 Press ◦ to see tide information for upcoming days.

5 Press ◦, and select **Set as Favorite** to set this location as your favorite tide station (optional).
Your favorite tide station appears at the top of the list in the app and in the glance.

TIP: To add more tide stations, you can press ◦, select **Edit** > **Add**, and follow the instructions in step 3.

Setting a Tide Alert

1 From the **Tides** app, select a saved tide station.

2 Press ◦, and select **Set Alerts**.

3 Select an option:
- To set an alarm to sound before the peak tide, select **Til High Tide**.
- To set an alarm to sound before the low tide, select **Til Low Tide**.

Marking Your Anchor Location

⚠ WARNING

The anchor feature is a tool for situational awareness only and may not prevent groundings or collisions in all circumstances. You are responsible for the safe and prudent operation of your vessel, for remaining aware of your surroundings, and for using safe judgment on the water at all times. Failure to heed this warning could result in property damage, serious personal injury, or death.

1. From the watch face, press ◯.
2. Select **Anchor**.
3. Wait while the watch locates satellites.
4. Press ◯, and select **Drop Anchor**.

Anchor Settings

From the watch face, press ◯, select **Anchor**, hold •◯, and select the app settings.

Drift Radius: Sets the allowable drift distance while anchored.

Update Interval: Sets the time interval for updating anchor data.

Anchor Alarm: Enables an alarm for when the boat moves beyond the drift radius.

Anchor Alarm Duration: Sets the anchor alarm duration. When the anchor alarm is enabled, an alert appears each time the boat moves beyond the drift radius during the specified alarm duration.

Trolling Motor Remote

Pairing Your Watch and Trolling Motor

You can use your watch as a remote control for your paired Garmin® trolling motor. Once the devices are paired, you can control the trolling motor using the **Trolling Motor** app, the **Boat** activity, or the **Fish** activity. For more information about using a remote control, see your trolling motor owner's manual.

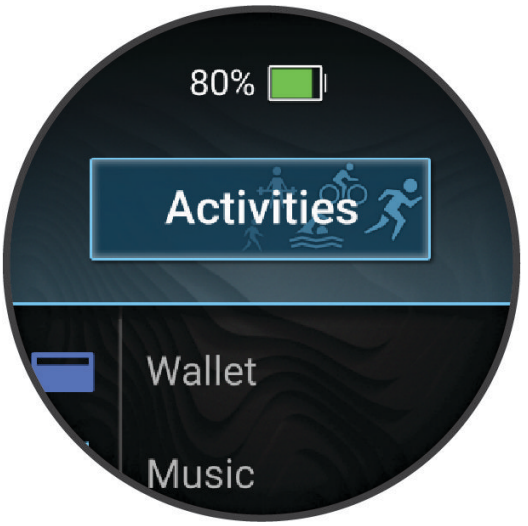
1. Turn on the trolling motor.
2. Bring the watch within 1 m (3 ft.) of the display panel on the trolling motor.
3. On the watch, press ◯, and select **Trolling Motor**.
4. On the trolling motor display panel, press ⏻ three times to enter pairing mode.
   ⇄ on the trolling motor display panel illuminates blue as it searches for a connection.
5. On the watch, press ◯ to enter pairing mode.
6. Verify that the passkey shown on your trolling motor remote control matches your watch.
7. On the watch, press ◯ to confirm the passkey.
8. On the trolling motor remote control, press ▶ to confirm the passkey.
   ⇄ on the trolling motor display panel illuminates green when the connection to your watch is successful.

TIP: If necessary, you can pair your watch with another trolling motor later from the **Sensors & Accessories** menu (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

Activities

From the watch face, press ◯, select **Activities**, and press ◯ to scroll through the activities. Your favorite activities list appears at the top of the list (*Customizing Your Favorite Activities List*, page 66).

NOTE: Some activities appear in more than one category.



Category	Activities
Outdoor	Adventure Race, Archery, Bouldering, Disc Golf, Expedition, Fish, Golf, Hike, Horseback, Hunt, Inline Skating, Mountaineering, Rucking, Walk
Running	Indoor Track, Run, Track Run, Trail Run, Treadmill, Obstacle Racing, Ultra Run, Virtual Run
Cycling	Bike, Bike Commute, Bike Indoor, Bike Tour, BMX, Cyclocross, eBike, eMTB, Gravel Bike, MTB, Road Bike
Swimming	Open Water, Pool Swim
Multisport	Mixed Session, Swimrun, Triathlon
Gym	Boxing, Cardio, Climb Indoor, Elliptical, Floor Climb, HIIT, Jump Rope, Mixed Martial Arts, Mobility, Pilates, Row Indoor, Stair Stepper, Strength, Walk Indoor, XC Ski Indoor, Yoga
Diving	Apnea Dive, Scuba Dive, Snorkel
Winter Sports	Backcountry Ski, Backcountry Snowboard, Ice Skating, Ski, Snowboard, Snowmobile, Snowshoe, XC Classic Ski, XC Skate Ski
Water Sports	Boat, Kayak, Kiteboard, Row, Sail, Sail Expedition, Sail Race, SUP, Surf, Tube, Wakeboard, Wakesurf, Water Ski, Whitewater, Windsurf
Team Sports	American Football, Baseball, Basketball, Cricket, Field Hockey, Ice Hockey, Lacrosse, Rugby, Soccer/Football, Softball, Volleyball, Ultimate Disc
Racket Sports	Badminton, Padel, Pickleball, Platform Tennis, Racquetball, Squash, Table Tennis, Tennis
Motorsports	ATV, Motocross, Motorcycle, Overland
Aviation	Fly
Other	Breathwork, Gaming, Jumpmaster, Meditation, Tactical, Tempo Training, Track Me

Starting an Activity

When you start an activity, GPS turns on automatically (if required). For more information about GPS, go to garmin.com/aboutGPS.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities**.
3. Select an option:
   - Select an activity from your favorites.
   - Scroll to the **More** activities list, select an activity category, and select an activity.
4. If the activity requires GPS signals, go outside to an area with a clear view of the sky, and wait until the GPS status bar is filled.

   The watch is ready after it establishes your heart rate, acquires GPS signals (if required), and connects to your wireless sensors (if required).
5. Press ⌚ to start the activity timer.

   The watch records activity data only while the activity timer is running.

Tips for Recording Activities

- Charge the watch before starting an activity (*Charging the Watch*, page 153).
- After selecting an activity but before starting the activity timer, press and scroll to view and update the activity status menu.

  TIP: During an activity, you can hold . and swipe down from the top of the screen to view the activity status menu.
- Press to record laps, start a new set or pose, or advance to the next workout step.

  You can select to discard a lap for certain activities that support manual laps, manual sport changes, and automatic sport changes (*How can I undo a lap button press?*, page 159).
- Press or to view additional data screens.
- Swipe up or down to view additional data screens.

  TIP: You can swipe down from the top of the screen to unlock the touchscreen during an activity.
- Swipe right or left to view the music controls or activity settings.
- During an activity, hold , and select **Change Sport** to transition to a different activity type.

  When your activity includes two or more sports, it is recorded as a multisport activity.
- Hold , select the activity settings, and select **Power Mode** to use a power mode to extend battery life (*Customizing Power Modes*, page 146).

GPS Status and Status Icons

For outdoor activities, the status bar turns green when GPS is ready. A flashing icon means the watch is searching for a signal. A solid icon means the signal was found or the sensor is connected.

GPS	GPS status
	Battery status
	Phone connection status
	Wi-Fi® technology status
	Airplane mode status
	LiveTrack status
	GroupTrack status
	LTE status
	Heart rate status
	Bluetooth® technology status
	ANT+® connectivity status
	Running Dynamics Pod status
	Speed and cadence sensor status
	Bike lights status
	Bike radar status
	Extended display mode status
	Smart trainer status
	Power meter status
	tempe™ sensor status

Stopping an Activity

Not all options are available for all activity types.

1 Press .
2 Select an option:
   - To resume your activity, select **Resume**.

- To switch to the next activity type during a **Mixed Session** activity, select **Next Activity** (*Recording a Mixed Session Activity*, page 51).
- To save the activity and view the details, select **Save**, and select an option.

  NOTE: After you save the activity, you can enter self-evaluation data (*Evaluating an Activity*, page 34).
- To suspend your activity and resume it at a later time, select **Resume Later**.
- To mark a lap, select **Lap**.

  You can select ↺ to discard a lap for certain activities (*How can I undo a lap button press?*, page 159).
- To navigate back to the starting point of your activity along the path you traveled, select **Back to Start** > **TracBack**.

  NOTE: This feature is available only for activities that use GPS.
- To navigate back to the starting point of your activity by the most direct path, select **Back to Start** > **Route**.

  NOTE: This feature is available only for activities that use GPS.
- To measure the difference between your heart rate at the end of the activity and your heart rate two minutes later, select **Recovery Heart Rate**, and wait while the timer counts down (*Recovery Heart Rate*, page 88).
- To discard the activity, select **Discard**, and press ◯.

NOTE: After stopping the activity, the watch saves it automatically after 30 minutes.

Evaluating an Activity

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

You can customize the self-evaluation setting for certain activities (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

1. After you complete an activity, select **Save** (*Stopping an Activity*, page 33).
2. Select a number that corresponds with your perceived effort.

   NOTE: You can select » to skip the self evaluation.
3. Select how you felt during the activity.

You can view evaluations in the Garmin Connect™ app.

Flying

⚠ WARNING

Do not use this watch as a primary means of navigation. See the *Important Safety and Product Information* document in the product box for product warnings and other important information prior to use.

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

Starting a Flight

When you pair your watch with the Garmin Pilot™ app, you can connect to compatible Connext® devices that you have paired with the Garmin Pilot app (*Connecting to the Garmin Pilot™ App*, page 121). With Connext connectivity, you can view avionics data during the flight (*Connext® Avionics Connectivity*, page 121).

TIP: Using the Garmin Pilot app, you can create and transfer flight plans that you can follow on your watch (*Sending a Flight Plan to Your Watch*, page 37).

1. From the watch face, press ◯.
2. Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly**.
3. Wait while the watch locates satellites.
4. If necessary, open the Garmin Pilot app and wait while your Connext devices connect.

   appears on the watch screen, and some data fields show the avionics and sensor data.

   NOTE: Your mobile device running the Garmin Pilot app must keep the app active throughout the flight. You should enable the setting in the Garmin Pilot app that prevents the device from locking.
5. Press ◯ to start the activity timer.

   TIP: You can enable the Auto Fly option to start a Fly activity automatically (*Activity Settings*, page 67).
6. Hold ◯, and select **Flight Timer** to start a flight timer that is separate from the activity timer (optional). The flight timer data screen appears in the data screen loop.
7. If necessary, press ◯, select **Nearest Airports**, and select a location to view the weather, map, or navigate to the location.

8 After you complete your activity, press ⌚, and select **Stop Fly** > **Save**.

Setting Aviation Alerts

1 From the watch face, press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly** > **In-flight Alerts**.
3 Select an option:
   - To receive an alert about the electronic systems of the connected aircraft, select **Avionics Alerts**.
   - To receive an alert at a specified altitude, select **Altitude Alert**.
   - To receive a carbon monoxide alert from avionics with a connected GCO™ sensor, select **GCO Alerts**.
   - To receive an oxygen level alert at a specified cabin altitude, select **O2 Alert**.
   - To receive a reminder to check the fuel tank after a specified time, select **Fuel Tank Reminder**.
   - To receive an alert when you deviate from your course by a specified distance, select **Cross Track Alert**.
   - To receive an alert when you reach a waypoint, select **Appr. Waypoint**.

   NOTE: You can prevent all aviation alerts from appearing during a flight by selecting Inhibit All.
4 If necessary, select **Active** to turn on the alert.
5 If necessary, enter a value for the alert.
6 Select **Vibe** to enable vibration for the alert.

Setting the Barometric Pressure Manually

You can set the current barometric pressure manually to help improve the accuracy of the pressure altitude reading.

1 From the watch face, press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly**.
3 Select the activity settings.
4 Select **Altimeter Settings** > **Barometer** > **Manual**.
5 Select an option:
   - To set the barometric pressure manually, select **Set Baro**, and enter a value.
   - To use the standard barometric pressure at sea level, select **Set to STD**.
   - To use the barometric pressure at your current elevation, select **Sync to Elevation**.
   - To use the current local barometric pressure from your watch, select **Sync to Device**.
   - To set the units of measure, select **Pressure**.

Horizontal Situation Indicator

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

1	Destination airport identifier and distance.
2	Estimated time en route (ETE).
3	To-and-from indicator. Indicates whether you are headed toward or away from the waypoint.
4	Cross-track distance.
5	Course deviation indicator (CDI). Indicates the location of the desired course line in relation to your location.
6	Course deviation distance. The dots indicate your distance off course. The maximum of two dots equals 2.5 nautical miles.

Viewing Your SpO2 Readings in Flight

⚠ WARNING

The SpO2 readings are intended for supplemental information only. Always defer to applicable flight instruments for primary awareness.

The watch has a wrist-based pulse oximeter to gauge the saturation of oxygen in your blood (SpO2). Knowing your oxygen saturation can help you determine how your body is adjusting to high altitudes. As your altitude increases, the level of oxygen in your blood can decrease. During a flight, the watch automatically takes pulse oximeter readings more frequently, so you can monitor your SpO2 percentage.

TIP: You can improve the accuracy of your SpO2 readings by turning on the All Day pulse oximeter mode (*Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode*, page 127).

1 Start a **Fly** activity.

   Your most recent reading appears as an oxygen saturation percentage and position on the color gauge.

   NOTE: If you are too active for the watch to determine your oxygen saturation, dashes appear instead of a percentage. You should remain stationary for up to 30 seconds while the watch reads your blood oxygen saturation.

2 If necessary, scroll up or down to view the pilot health data screen with hourly pulse oximeter trends.

Viewing the NEXRAD Weather Radar Map

When you pair your watch with your phone, you can view the NEXRAD weather radar map and nearest aviation waypoints for your current location.

Select an option:

- Hold and .
- From watch face, press to view the weather glance, select the glance, and scroll to the map.

Flight Navigation

You can use the direct-to navigation feature to navigate directly to an airport or waypoint, or you can follow a more detailed flight plan with multiple locations.

Starting Direct-To Navigation

You can use the **Direct-To** navigation feature to quickly navigate to an airport or waypoint. When you search for a destination, you can view the distance, bearing and pointer, and flight conditions for each location.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold .
   - From any screen, hold , and select .
   - Hold and , select a location, and select **Direct-To**.
   - From the watch face, press , select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly**, press , and select **Navigate** > **Direct-To**.
   - During a flight, press , and select **Direct-To**.

2 Select an option:
   - To navigate to a favorite airport, select **Favorite Airports**.
   - To navigate to a nearby airport, select **Nearest Airports**.
   - To navigate to a nearby navigational aid, select **Nearest Navaids**.
   - To navigate to a nearby intersection, select **Nearest Intersection**.
   - To navigate to a waypoint on a saved flight plan, select **Flight Plan Waypoints**.
   - To navigate to a saved waypoint, select **User Waypoints**.

- To search for a location, select **Search by Ident.**, and enter all or part of the alphanumeric identifier.

3 Select a location.
Navigation information appears in the Fly activity.

Sending a Flight Plan to Your Watch

You can use the Garmin Pilot™ app to create flight plans and send them to your D2™ Mach 2 watch.

1 Connect your watch to the Garmin Pilot app (*Connecting to the Garmin Pilot™ App*, page 121).
2 In the Garmin Pilot app, select **Home** > **Flight Plan**.
3 Create a flight plan.
4 Select .
5 Select **Send To** to send the flight plan to your watch (*Following a Flight Plan*, page 37).

Creating a Flight Plan on Your Watch

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly** > **Navigate** > **Create Flight Plan**.
3 Select **Add**.
4 Select a location type.
5 Select the first point on the flight plan.
6 Repeat steps 3 through 5 to add more locations.
7 Select **Done** to save the flight plan.

Following a Flight Plan

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly** > **Navigate** > **Saved**.

TIP: To start following a flight plan after you start a flight, hold , and select **Navigate** > **Saved**.

3 Select a flight plan.
4 Swipe down to view the flight plan on the map (optional).
5 Select **Load Flt.** to begin following the flight plan.
6 Press to start the **Fly** activity.

Editing a Flight Plan

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly** > **Navigate** > **Saved**.
3 Select a flight plan.
4 Select **More** > **Edit**.
5 Select an option:
   - To change the order of a location on the route, select the location, scroll up or down, and press .
   - To remove a location from the route, select the location, and select .
   - To add a location to the route, select **Add**, select a category, and select a location.
6 Select **Done** to save the flight plan.

Deleting a Flight Plan

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Aviation** > **Fly** > **Navigate** > **Saved**.
3 Select a flight plan.
4 Select **More** > **Delete**.

Outdoor Activities

Golfing

Playing Golf

Before you play golf, you should charge the watch (*Charging the Watch*, page 153).

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Golf**.

The device locates satellites, calculates your location, and selects a course if there is only one course nearby.

3 If the course list appears, select a course from the list.
4 If necessary, set your driver distance.
5 Select ✔ to keep score.
6 Select a tee box.
The hole information screen appears.

1	Current hole number.
2	Par for the hole.
3	Map of the hole. Colored dots indicate layup distances to the pin in meters or yards. Red is 100, white is 150, blue is 200, and yellow is 250.
4	Driver distance from the tee box.
5	Distances to the front, middle, and back of the green.

NOTE: Because pin locations change, the watch calculates the distance to the front, middle, and back of the green, but not the actual pin location.

7 Select an option:
- Tap the front, middle, or back distances to the green to view the PlaysLike distance (*PlaysLike Distance Icons*, page 40).
- Press or to view additional data, including your handicap rating and the PlaysLike factors.
- Tap the map to view more detail or measure distance with touch targeting (*Measuring Distance with Touch Targeting*, page 40).
- Tap the map and press or to view the location and distance to a layup or to the front and back of a hazard.
- Press to open the golf menu (*Golf Menu*, page 38).

When you move to the next hole, the watch automatically transitions to display the new hole information.

Golf Menu

During a round, you can press to access additional features in the golf menu.

View Map: Opens the map when the watch is in Big Numbers mode.

View Green: Sets the pin location to get a more precise distance measurement (*Moving the Flag*, page 39).

Virtual Caddie: Requests a club recommendation from the virtual caddie (*Virtual Caddie*, page 39).

Change Hole: Manually changes the hole.

Change Green: Changes the green when more than one green is available for a hole.

Scorecard: Opens the scorecard for the round (*Keeping Score*, page 41).

PinPointer: The PinPointer feature is a compass that points to the pin location when you are unable to see the green. This feature can help you line up a shot even if you are in the woods or in a deep sand trap.

NOTE: Do not use the PinPointer feature while in a golf cart. Interference from the golf cart can affect the accuracy of the compass.

Wind: Opens a pointer that shows the wind direction and speed relative to the pin (*Viewing the Wind Speed and Direction*, page 42).

Round Info: Shows the recorded time, distance, and steps traveled. This automatically starts and stops when you start or end a round.

Measure Shot: Shows the distance of your previous shot recorded with the Garmin AutoShot™ feature (*Viewing Measured Shots*, page 41). You can also manually record a shot (*Manually Measuring a Shot*, page 41).

Club Stats: Shows your statistics with each golf club, such as distance and accuracy information. Appears when you pair compatible Approach® club tracking sensors or enable the Club Prompt setting.

Custom Targets: Saves a location, such as an object or obstacle, for the current hole (*Saving Custom Targets*, page 42).

Add Back Nine: Adds the back nine holes when playing on a nine-hole course, allowing you to play a full round.

Sunrise & Sunset: Shows the sunrise, sunset, and twilight times for the current day.

Settings: Customizes the golf activity settings (*Golf Settings*, page 39).

End Round: Ends the current round.

Golf Settings

During a round, you can press , and select **Settings** to customize the golf settings.

Scoring: Allows you to set the scoring options (*Scoring Settings*, page 41).

Driver Distance: Sets the average distance the ball travels from the tee box on your drive. The driver distance appears as an arc on the map.

PlaysLike: Sets preferences for the "plays like" distance feature, which shows adjusted distances to the green while playing golf (*PlaysLike Distance Icons*, page 40).

Virtual Caddie: Allows you to select automatic or manual virtual caddie club recommendations. Appears after you play five rounds of golf, track your clubs, and upload your scorecards to the Garmin Golf™ app.

Big Numbers: Changes the size of the numbers on the hole view screen.

Tournament Mode: Disables the PinPointer and PlaysLike distance features. These features are not allowed during sanctioned tournaments or handicap calculation rounds.

Golf Distance: Sets the unit of measure for distance while playing golf.

Golf Wind Speed: Sets the unit of measure for wind speed while playing golf.

Club Tracking: Allows you to set up your compatible Approach® club tracking sensors. The Club Prompt setting prompts you to enter which golf club you used after each detected shot to record your club statistics (*Recording Statistics*, page 41).

Satellites: Sets the satellite system to use for the activity (*Satellite Settings*, page 72).

Record Activity: Enables activity FIT file recording. FIT files record fitness information that is tailored for the Garmin Connect™ website and app.

Touch: Enables the touchscreen during the golf activity.

Pair Rangefinder: Allows you to pair the watch to your compatible rangefinder.

Moving the Flag

You can take a closer look at the green and move the pin location.

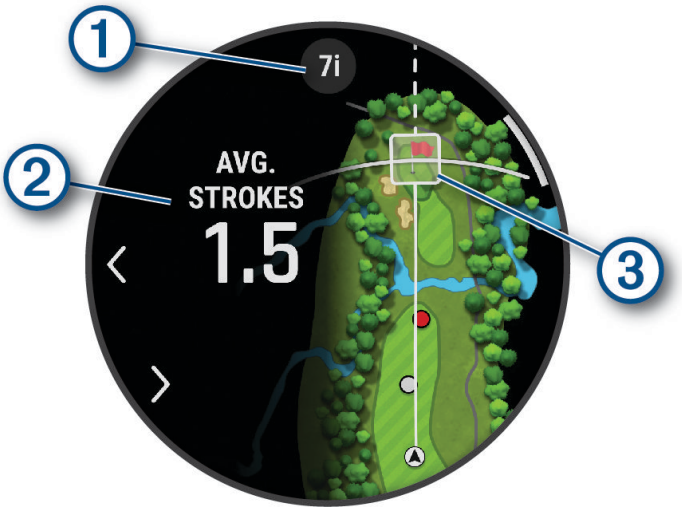
1. From the hole information screen, press .
2. Select **View Green**.
3. If necessary, use the slider on the right side of the screen to zoom in or out.
4. Tap or drag to move the pin location.
5. Press .

   The distances on the hole information screen are updated to show the new pin location. The pin location is saved for only the current round.

Virtual Caddie

Before you can use the virtual caddie, you must play five rounds with Approach® club tracking sensors or enable the Club Prompt setting (*Activity Settings*, page 67), and upload your scorecards. For each round, you must

connect to a paired phone with the Garmin Golf™ app. The virtual caddie provides recommendations based on the hole, wind data, and your past performance with each club.



1	Displays the club or club combination recommendation for the hole. You can select ❮ or ❯ to view other club options.
2	Displays the average number of strokes expected to score with the club recommendation.
3	Displays the shot dispersion area for your next shot with the club recommendation, based on your shot history with the club. **NOTE:** If the shot dispersion area overlaps with the green, the shot's chances of reaching the green will display as a percentage.

PlaysLike Distance Icons

The PlaysLike distance feature accounts for elevation changes on the course, wind speed, wind direction, and air density by showing the adjusted distance to the green. During a round, you can tap a distance to the green to view the PlaysLike distance. You can swipe up or press ◯ to see how much the distance has changed due to each of the factors.

TIP: You can configure what data is factored into the PlaysLike adjustments in the activity settings (*PlaysLike Settings*, page 40).

▲: Distance plays longer than expected.

■: Distance plays as expected.

▼: Distance plays shorter than expected.

◪: The difference in the distance due to elevation changes.

⮝: The difference in the distance due to the wind speed and direction.

🌪: The difference in the distance due to the air density.

PlaysLike Settings

During a round, press ◯, and select **Settings** > **PlaysLike**.

Wind: Enables wind speed and direction to be included in the PlaysLike distance adjustments.

Weather: Enables air density to be included in the PlaysLike distance adjustments.

Home Conditions: Allows you to manually change the altitude, temperature, and humidity settings used for the air density.

NOTE: It can be helpful to set weather conditions that match where you typically play. If they do not match the conditions at your normal course locations, the air density adjustments may seem inaccurate.

Measuring Distance with Touch Targeting

While playing a game, you can use touch targeting to measure the distance to any point on the map.

1. While playing golf, tap the map.
2. Tap or drag your finger to position the target circle ⌖.

   You can view the distance from your current position to the target circle, and from the target circle to the pin location.

3 If necessary, use the slider on the right side of the screen to zoom in or out.

Viewing Measured Shots

Your device features automatic shot detection and recording. Each time you take a shot along the fairway, the device records your shot distance so you can view it later.

TIP: Automatic shot detection works best when you wear the device on your leading wrist and make good contact with the ball. Putts are not detected. To detect putts automatically, you must use an Approach® golf club tracking accessory and enable club tracking (*Golf Settings*, page 39).

1 While playing golf, press .
2 Select **Measure Shot**.
   Your last shot distance appears.
   NOTE: The distance automatically resets when you hit the ball again, putt on the green, or move to the next hole.
3 Press and select **Previous Shots** to view all recorded shot distances.
   The distance from the most recent shot also displays at the top of the hole information screen.

Manually Measuring a Shot

You can manually add a shot if the watch doesn't detect it. You must add the shot from the location of the missed shot.

1 Take a shot and watch where your ball lands.
2 From the hole information screen, press .
3 Select **Measure Shot**.
4 Press .
5 Select **Add Shot** > ✔.
6 If necessary, enter the club you used for the shot.
7 Walk or drive to your ball.

The next time you take a shot, the watch automatically records your last shot distance. If necessary, you can manually add another shot.

Keeping Score

1 From the hole information screen, press .
2 Select **Scorecard**.
   The scorecard appears when you are on the green.
3 Press or to scroll through the holes.
4 Press to select a hole.
5 Press or to set the score.
   Your total score is updated.

Recording Statistics

Before you can record statistics, you must enable statistics tracking (*Scoring Settings*, page 41).

1 From the scorecard, select a hole.
2 Enter the total number of strokes taken, including putts, and press .
3 Set the number of putts taken, and press .
   NOTE: The number of putts taken is used for statistics tracking only and does not increase your score.
4 If necessary, select an option:
   NOTE: If you are on a par 3 hole, fairway information does not appear.
   - If your ball hit the fairway, select **In Fairway**.
   - If your ball missed the fairway, select **Missed Right** or **Missed Left**.
5 If necessary, enter the number of penalty strokes.

Scoring Settings

During a round, press , and select **Settings** > **Scoring**.

Scoring Method: Changes the method the device uses to keep score.

Handicap Scoring: Enables handicap scoring.

Set Handicap: Sets your handicap when handicap scoring is enabled.

Show Score: Displays your total score for the round at the top of the scorecard (*Keeping Score*, page 41).

Stat Tracking: Enables statistics tracking for the number of putts, greens in regulation, and fairways hit while playing golf.

Penalties: Enables penalty stroke tracking while playing golf (*Recording Statistics*, page 41).

Prompt: Enables the prompt at the start of a round asking if you want to keep score.

About Stableford Scoring

When you select the Stableford scoring method (*Activity Settings*, page 67), points are awarded based on the number of strokes taken relative to par. At the end of a round, the highest score wins. The device awards points as specified by the United States Golf Association.

The scorecard for a Stableford scored game shows points instead of strokes.

Points	Strokes Taken Relative to Par
0	2 or more over
1	1 over
2	Par
3	1 under
4	2 under
5	3 under

Viewing the Wind Speed and Direction

The wind feature is a pointer that shows the wind speed and direction relative to the pin. The wind feature requires a connection with the Garmin Golf™ app.

1. While playing a round, press .
2. Select **Wind**.

   The arrow points to the wind direction relative to the pin.

   TIP: You can also view the wind speed and direction from the wind icon on the hole view screen (*Playing Golf*, page 37).

Viewing the Direction to the Pin

The PinPointer feature is a compass that provides directional assistance when you are unable to see the green. This feature can help you line up a shot even if you are in the woods or in a deep sand trap.

NOTE: Do not use the PinPointer feature while in a golf cart. Interference from the golf cart can affect the accuracy of the compass.

1. While playing a round, select .
2. Select **PinPointer**.

   The arrow points to the pin location.

Saving Custom Targets

While playing a round, you can save up to five custom targets for each hole. Saving a target is useful for recording objects or obstacles that are not shown on the map. You can view the distances to these targets from the hazards and layups screen (*Playing Golf*, page 37).

1. Stand near the target you want to save.

   NOTE: You cannot save a target that is far from the currently selected hole.
2. From the hole information screen, press .
3. Select **Custom Targets**.
4. Select a target type.

Big Numbers Mode

You can change the size of the numbers on the hole information screen.

1. During a round, press .
2. Select **Settings** > **Big Numbers**.

The distances to the front, middle, and back of the green appear in large font on the hole information screen.

3 Press or to view additional data, such as your handicap rating. Data also includes the PlaysLike distance to the middle of the green, and wind speed and direction.

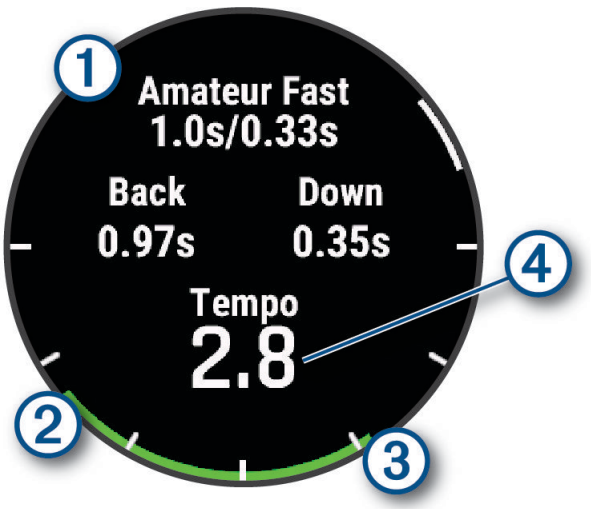
Swing Tempo Training

The Tempo Training activity helps you perform a more consistent swing. The device measures and displays your backswing time and downswing time. The device also displays your swing tempo. Swing tempo is the backswing time divided by the downswing time, expressed in a ratio. A 3 to 1 ratio, or 3.0, is the ideal swing tempo based on studies of professional golfers.

The Ideal Swing Tempo

You can achieve the ideal 3.0 tempo using different swing timings, for example, 0.7 sec./0.23 sec. or 1.2 sec./0.4 sec. Each golfer may have a unique swing tempo based on their ability and experience. Garmin® provides six different timings.

The device displays a graph that indicates if your backswing or downswing times are too fast, too slow, or just right for the selected timing.



1	Timing choices (backswing to downswing time ratio)
2	Backswing time
3	Downswing time
4	Your tempo
	Good timing

	Too slow
	Too fast

To find your ideal swing timing, you should start with the slowest timing and try it for a few swings. When the tempo graph is consistently green for both your backswing and downswing times, you can move up to the next timing. When you find a timing that is comfortable, you can use it to achieve more consistent swings and performance.

Analyzing Your Swing Tempo

You must hit a ball to view your swing tempo.

1 Press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Other** > **Tempo Training**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Settings** > **Swing Speed**, and select an option.
5 Complete a full swing, and hit the ball.
   The watch displays your swing analysis.

Viewing the Tip Sequence

The first time you use the Tempo Training activity, the watch displays a tip sequence to explain how your swing is analyzed.

1 During your activity, press .
2 Select **Tips**.
3 Press to view the next tip.

Recording a Bouldering Activity

You can record routes during a bouldering activity. A route is a climbing path along a boulder or small rock formation.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Bouldering**.
3 Select a grading system.
   NOTE: The next time you start a bouldering activity, the watch uses this grading system. You can scroll down, select the activity settings, and select **Grading System** to change the system.
4 Select the difficulty level for the route.
5 Press to start the route timer.
6 Start your first route.
7 Press to finish the route.
8 Select an option:
   - To save a successful route, select **Completed**.
   - To save an unsuccessful route, select **Attempted**.
   - To delete the route, select **Discard**.
9 When you are done resting, press to start your next route.
10 Repeat this process for each route until your activity is complete.
11 After your last route, press to stop the route timer.
12 Select **Save**.

Starting an Expedition

You can use the **Expedition** activity to prolong the battery life while recording a multi-day activity.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Expedition**.
3 Press to start the activity timer.
   The device enters low power mode and collects GPS track points once an hour. To maximize battery life, the device turns off all sensors and accessories, including the connection to your smartphone.

Recording a Track Point Manually

During an expedition, track points are recorded automatically based on the selected recording interval. You can manually record a track point at any time.

1 During an expedition, press .
2 Select **Add Point**.

Viewing Track Points

1 During an expedition, press .
2 Select **View Points**.
3 Select a track point from the list.
4 Select an option:
   - To start navigating to the track point, select **Go To**.
   - To view detailed information about the track point, select **Details**.

Going Fishing

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Fish**.
3 Press .
4 Press , and select an option:
   - To add the catch to your fish count and save the location, select **Log Catch**.
   - To save your current location, select **Save Location**.
   - To set an interval timer, end time, or end time reminder for the activity, select **Fish Timers**.
   - To navigate back to the starting point of your activity, select **Back to Start**, and select an option.
   - To view your saved locations, select **Saved Locations**.
   - To navigate to a destination, select **Navigation**, and select an option.
   - To edit the activity settings, select **Settings**, and select an option (*Activity Settings*, page 67).
5 After you complete your activity, press , and select **End Fish**.

Going Hunting

You can save locations relevant to your hunt and view a map of saved locations. During a hunting activity, the device uses a GNSS mode that conserves battery life.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Hunt**.
3 Press , and select **Start Hunt**.
4 Press , and select an option:
   - To navigate back to the starting point of your activity, select **Back to Start**, and select an option.
   - To save your current location, select **Save Location**.
   - To view locations saved during this hunt activity, select **Hunt Locations**.
   - To view all previously saved locations, select **Saved Locations**.
   - To navigate to a destination, select **Navigation**, and select an option.
   - To edit the activity settings, select **Settings**, and select an option (*Activity Settings*, page 67).
5 After you complete your hunt, press , and select **End Hunt**.

Running

Going for a Track Run

Before you go for a track run, make sure you are running on a standard-shape, 400 m track.

You can use the track run activity to record your outdoor track data, including distance in meters and lap splits.

1 Stand on the outdoor track.
2 From the watch face, press .
3 Select **Activities** > **Running** > **Track Run**.
4 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
5 If you are running in lane 1, skip to step 8.

6 Select **Lane Number**.
7 Select a lane number.
8 Press .
9 Run around the track.
10 After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Tips for Recording a Track Run

The Garmin® track database contains over 10,000 tracks from all over the world.

- Wait until the watch acquires satellite signals before starting a track run.
- If your watch does not recognize the track, run four laps to calibrate your track distance.
  You should run slightly past your starting point to complete the lap.
- Run each lap in the same lane.
  NOTE: The default Auto Lap® distance is 1600 m, or four laps around the track.
- If you are running in a lane other than lane 1, set the lane number in the activity settings.

Going for a Virtual Run

You can pair your watch with a compatible third-party app to transmit pace, heart rate, or cadence data.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Running** > **Virtual Run**.
3 On your tablet, laptop, or phone, open the Zwift™ app or another virtual training app.
4 Follow the on-screen instructions to start a running activity and pair the devices.
5 Press to start the activity timer.
6 After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Calibrating the Treadmill Distance

To record more accurate distances for your treadmill runs, you can calibrate the treadmill distance after you run at least 2.4 km (1.5 mi.) on a treadmill. If you use different treadmills, you can manually calibrate the treadmill distance on each treadmill or after each run.

1 Start a treadmill activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32).
2 Run on the treadmill until your watch records at least 2.4 km (1.5 mi.).
3 After you finish the activity, press to stop the activity timer.
4 Select an option:
   - To calibrate the treadmill distance the first time, select **Save**.
     The device prompts you to complete the treadmill calibration.
   - To manually calibrate the treadmill distance after the first-time calibration, select **Calibrate & Save** > ✓.
5 Check the treadmill display for the distance traveled, and enter the distance on your watch.

Recording an Ultra Run Activity

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Running** > **Ultra Run**.
3 Press to start the activity timer.
4 Start running.
5 Press to record a lap and start the rest timer.
   TIP: You can configure how the Auto Rest setting records rest splits and laps (*Ultra Run Auto Rest Settings*, page 46).
6 When you are done resting, press to resume running.
7 Press or to view additional data screens (optional).
8 After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Ultra Run Auto Rest Settings

You can customize the options for automatically starting and stopping the rest timer for the Ultra Run activity.

Status: Enables automatically recording rest splits.

Rest Start: Automatically starts the rest timer when you stop running. You can use the Manual Only option to start the rest timer only when you press .

Rest End: Sets the pace required to end a rest split.

Minimum Time: Sets the amount of time before a rest split starts or ends.

Lap Key: Sets the button to record a lap and start the rest timer, start the rest timer only, or record a lap only.

Recording an Obstacle Racing Activity

When you participate in an obstacle course race, you can use the Obstacle Racing activity to record your time on each obstacle and your time running between obstacles.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Running** > **Obstacle Racing**.
3. Press to start the activity timer.
4. Press to manually mark the beginning and end of each obstacle.

   NOTE: You can configure the **Obstacle Tracking** setting to save obstacle locations from your first loop of the course. On repeat loops of the course, the watch uses the saved locations to switch between obstacle and running intervals.
5. After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

PacePro™ Training

Many runners like to wear a pace band during a race to help achieve their race goal. The PacePro feature allows you to create a custom pace band based on distance and pace or distance and time. You can also create a pace band for a known course to optimize your pace effort based on elevation changes.

You can create a PacePro plan using the Garmin Connect™ app. You can preview the splits and elevation plot before you run the course.

Downloading a PacePro™ Plan from Garmin Connect™

Before you can download a PacePro plan from Garmin Connect, you must have a Garmin Connect account (*Garmin Connect™*, page 118).

1. Select an option:
   - Open the Garmin Connect app, and select •••.
   - Go to **connect.garmin.com**.
2. Select **Training & Planning** > **PacePro Pacing Strategies**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create and save a PacePro plan.
4. Select or **Send to Device**.

Creating a PacePro™ Plan on Your Watch

Before you can create a PacePro plan on your watch, you must create a course (*Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™*, page 135).

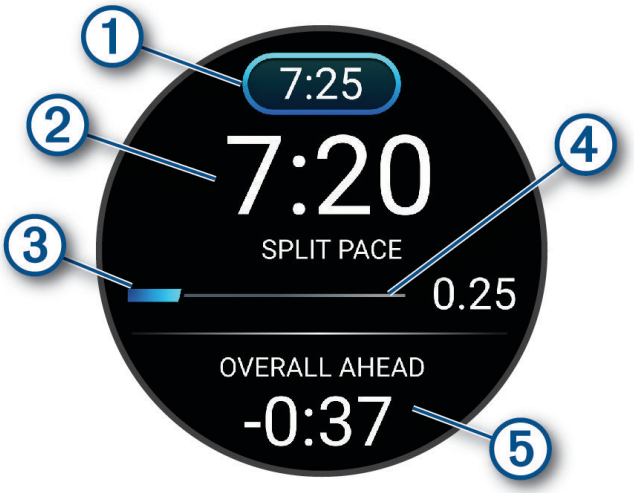
1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities**, and select an outdoor running activity.
3. Scroll down to select **Training** > **PacePro Plans** > **Create New**.
4. Select a course.
5. Select an option:
   - Select **Goal Pace**, and enter your target pace.
   - Select **Goal Time**, and enter your target time.

   Scroll down to view your custom pace band and preview the splits.
6. Press .
7. Select an option:
   - Select **Use Plan** to start the plan.
   - Select **Map** to view the course on the map.
   - Select **Delete** to discard the plan.

Starting a PacePro™ Plan

Before you can start a PacePro plan, you must download a plan from your Garmin Connect™ account, or create a PacePro plan on your watch (*Creating a PacePro™ Plan on Your Watch*, page 47).

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select an outdoor running activity.
3 Scroll down to select **Training** > **PacePro Plans**.
4 Select a plan.
TIP: You can scroll down to preview the splits and elevation plot before you accept the PacePro plan.
5 Press ◯.
6 Select **Use Plan** to start the plan.
7 If necessary, select ✔ to enable course navigation.
8 Press ◯ to start the activity timer.



①	Target split pace
②	Current split pace
③	Completion progress for the split
④	Distance remaining in the split
⑤	Overall time ahead of or behind your target time

TIP: You can hold ◯, and select **Stop PacePro** > ✔ to stop the PacePro plan. The activity timer continues running.

Swimming

NOTE: The watch has wrist-based heart rate enabled for swim activities. The watch is also compatible with chest heart rate monitors, such as the HRM-Pro™ series accessories. If both wrist-based heart rate and chest heart rate data are available, your watch uses the chest heart rate data.

Swim Terminology

Length: One trip down the pool.

Interval: One or more consecutive lengths. A new interval starts after a rest.

Stroke: A stroke is counted every time your arm wearing the watch completes a full cycle.

Swolf: Your swolf score is the sum of the time for one pool length and the number of strokes for that length. For example, 30 seconds plus 15 strokes equals a swolf score of 45. For open water swimming, swolf is calculated over 25 meters. Swolf is a measurement of swimming efficiency and, like golf, a lower score is better.

Critical swim speed (CSS): Your CSS is the theoretical speed that you can maintain continuously without exhaustion. You can use your CSS to guide your training pace and monitor your improvement.

Stroke Types

Stroke type identification is available only for pool swimming. Your stroke type is identified at the end of a length. Stroke types appear in your swimming history and in your Garmin Connect™ account. You can also select stroke type as a custom data field (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

Free	Freestyle
Back	Backstroke
Breast	Breaststroke
Fly	Butterfly
Mixed	More than one stroke type in an interval
Drill	Used with drill logging (*Training with the Drill Log*, page 49)

Tips for Swimming Activities

- Press to record an interval during open water swimming.
- Before starting a pool swimming activity, follow the on-screen instructions to select your pool size or enter a custom size.

  The watch measures and records distance by completed pool lengths. The pool size must be correct to display accurate distance. The next time you start a pool swimming activity, the watch uses this pool size. You can scroll down to select the activity settings, and select **Pool Size** to change the size.
- For accurate results, swim the entire pool length, and use one stroke type for the entire length. Pause the activity timer when resting.
- Press to record a rest during pool swimming (*Swim Auto Rest and Manual Rest*, page 49).

  The watch automatically records swim intervals and lengths for pool swimming.
- To help the watch count your lengths, use a strong push off the wall and glide before your first stroke.
- When doing drills, you must either pause the activity timer or use the drill logging feature (*Training with the Drill Log*, page 49).

Swim Auto Rest and Manual Rest

The auto rest feature is available only for pool swimming. Your watch automatically detects when you are resting, and the rest screen appears. If you rest for more than 15 seconds, the watch automatically creates a rest interval. When you resume swimming, the watch automatically starts a new swim interval.

TIP: For best results using the auto rest feature, minimize your arm motions while resting.

To use manual rests instead, you can turn off the auto rest feature in the activity options (*Activity Settings*, page 67). During a swimming activity, you can manually mark a rest interval by pressing . Swim data is not recorded during a rest interval.

TIP: Use manual rests if you are taking short rests or you want very precise swim interval timing.

Training with the Drill Log

The drill log feature is available only for pool swimming. You can use the drill log feature to manually record kick sets, one-arm swimming, or any type of swimming that is not one of the four major strokes.

1. During your pool swim activity, scroll up or down to view the drill log screen.
2. Press to start the drill timer.
3. After you complete a drill interval, press .

   The drill timer stops, but the activity timer continues to record the entire swim session.
4. Select a distance for the completed drill.

   Distance increments are based on the pool size selected for the activity profile.
5. Select an option:
   - To start another drill interval, press .
   - To start a swim interval, scroll up or down to return to the swim training screens.

   After you complete the drill, the activity enters rest mode.
6. Select an option:
   - To resume the activity, press .
   - To end the activity, press .

Cycling

Using an Indoor Trainer

Before you can use a compatible indoor trainer, you must pair the trainer with your watch using Bluetooth® or ANT+® technology (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

You can use your watch with an indoor trainer to simulate resistance while following a course, ride, or workout. While using an indoor trainer, GPS is turned off automatically.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Cycling** > **Bike Indoor**.
3 Hold .
4 Select **Smart Trainer Options**.
5 Select an option:
   - Select **Free Ride** to go for a ride.
   - Select **Follow Workout** to follow a saved workout (*Workouts*, page 12).
   - Select **Follow Course** to follow a saved course (*Courses*, page 135).
   - Select **Set Power** to set the target power value.
   - Select **Set Grade** to set the simulated grade value.
   - Select **Set Resistance** to set the resistance force applied by the trainer.
6 Press to start the activity timer.
   The trainer increases or decreases resistance based on the elevation information in the course or ride.

Power Guide

You can create and use a power strategy to plan your effort on a course. Your D2™ device uses your FTP, the course elevation, and the projected time it will take you to complete the course to create a customized power guide.

One of the most important steps in planning a successful power guide strategy is choosing your effort level. Putting a harder effort into the course will increase the power recommendations, while choosing an easier effort will reduce them (*Creating and Using a Power Guide*, page 50). The primary goal of a power guide is to help you complete the course based on what is known about your ability, not to achieve a specific target time. You can adjust the effort level during your ride.

Power guides are always associated with a course and cannot be used with workouts or segments. You can view and edit your strategy in the Garmin Connect™ app and sync it with compatible Garmin® devices. This feature requires a power meter, which must be paired with your device (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

Creating and Using a Power Guide

Before you can create a power guide, you must pair a power meter with your watch (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107). You must also have a course loaded to your Garmin Connect™ account (*Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™*, page 135).

1 From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Power Guide** > **Create Power Guide Strategy**.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions to create the power guide.
4 Select .
5 Select your watch.
6 From the watch face, press .
7 On your watch, select an outdoor biking activity.
8 Scroll down to select **Training** > **Power Guide**.
9 Select a power guide.
10 Press , and select **Use Plan**.
   TIP: You can preview the map, elevation plot, effort, settings, and splits. You can also adjust the effort, terrain, riding position, and gear weight before you start riding.

Multisport

Triathletes, duathletes, and other multisport competitors can take advantage of the multisport activities, such as Triathlon or Swimrun. During a multisport activity, you can transition between activities and continue to view

your total time. For example, you can switch from biking to running and view your total time for biking and running throughout the multisport activity.

You can customize a multisport activity, or you can use the default triathlon activity set up for a standard triathlon.

Recording a Mixed Session Activity

You can use the mixed session activity to record multiple sports in a row, without having to end one sport and start another.

Not all activities are available during a mixed session.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Multisport** > **Mixed Session**.
3. Select an activity.
4. Press to start the activity timer.
5. After completing the activity, press to stop the activity timer.
6. Select **Next Activity**.
7. Select your next activity.
8. Repeat steps 4-7 until the mixed session activity is complete.

   While the activity timer is running, you can swipe right to return to the previous activity.
9. Press to stop the activity timer.
10. Select **Save** > ✔.
11. Select an option:
    - Scroll to view the time for each leg of the activity and performance measurements for the entire mixed session activity.
    - Press to view additional options, such as activity data for each leg, or to delete the activity.

Triathlon Training

When you participate in a triathlon, you can use the triathlon activity to quickly transition to each sport segment, to time each segment, and to save the activity.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Multisport** > **Triathlon**.
3. Press to start the activity timer.

   NOTE: The first time you start a triathlon activity, you can turn on **Auto Sport Change** so the watch will automatically detect sport changes and advance to the next transition or sport (*Activity Settings*, page 67).
4. If necessary, hold at the beginning and end of each transition (*How can I undo a lap button press?*, page 159).

   The transition feature is on by default, and the transition time is recorded separately from the activity time. The transition feature can be turned on or off in the triathlon activity settings. If transitions are turned off, hold to change sports.
5. After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Creating a Multisport Activity

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Edit** > **Add** > **Multisport**.
3. Select a multisport activity type, or select **Custom** and enter a name.

   Duplicate activity names include a number. For example, Triathlon(2).
4. Select two or more activities.
5. Select an option:
   - Select an option to customize specific activity settings. For example, you can select whether to include transitions.
   - Select **Done** to save and use the multisport activity.

Gym Activities

The watch can be used for training indoors, such as running on an indoor track or using a stationary bike or indoor trainer. GPS is turned off for indoor activities (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

When running or walking with GPS turned off, speed and distance are calculated using the accelerometer in the watch. The accelerometer is self-calibrating. The accuracy of the speed and distance data improves after a few outdoor runs or walks using GPS.

TIP: Holding the handrails of the treadmill reduces accuracy.

When cycling with GPS turned off, speed and distance data are not available unless you have an optional sensor that sends speed and distance data to the watch, such as a speed or cadence sensor.

Recording a Strength Training Activity

You can record sets during a strength training activity. A set is multiple repetitions (reps) of a single move. You can create and find strength workouts in your Garmin Connect™ account and send them to your watch.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Gym** > **Strength**.
3. Select an option:
   - To do an open-ended workout, select **Free**.

     TIP: You can enable the **Rest Countdown** option to alert you after a specified rest timer duration.
   - To follow a structured workout, select a workout, scroll down and select a step to view the exercise animation (if available), and when you have finished viewing the workout select **Do Workout**.

     TIP: You can select **More** to view the required equipment, edit the workout, and more before you start the workout.
4. Press to start the activity.
5. Start your first set.

   The watch counts your reps. Your rep count appears when you complete at least four reps.

   TIP: The watch can only count reps of a single move for each set. When you want to change moves, you should finish the set and start a new one.
6. Press to finish the set and move to the next exercise, if available.

   The watch displays the total reps for the set.
7. If necessary, edit the set, the number of reps, and the weight used for the set.
8. If necessary, press when you are done resting to start your next set.
9. Repeat for each strength training set until your activity is complete.

   TIP: During your workout, you can press to edit your previous sets. For structured workouts, you have options to skip a set or change the next set.
10. After your last set, press , and select **Stop Workout**.
11. Select **Save**.

Recording a HIIT Activity

You can use specialized timers to record a high-intensity interval training (HIIT) activity.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities** > **Gym** > **HIIT**.
3. If necessary, select **HIIT Type**, and select an option:
   - Select **Free** to record an open, unstructured HIIT activity.
   - Select **HIIT Timers** > **AMRAP** to record as many rounds as possible during a set time period.
   - Select **HIIT Timers** > **EMOM** to record a set number of moves every minute on the minute.
   - Select **HIIT Timers** > **Tabata** to alternate between 20-second intervals of maximum effort with 10 seconds of rest.
   - Select **HIIT Timers** > **Custom** to set your move time, rest time, number of moves, and number of rounds.
   - Select **Workouts** to follow a saved workout.
4. If necessary, follow the on-screen instructions.
5. Press to start your first round.

   The watch displays a countdown timer and your current heart rate.

6 If necessary, press to manually move to the next round or rest.
7 After you finish the activity, press to stop the activity timer.
8 Select **Save**.

Recording an Indoor Climbing Activity

You can record routes during an indoor climbing activity. A route is a climbing path along an indoor rock wall.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Gym** > **Climb Indoor**.
3 Select ✔ to record route statistics.
4 Select a grading system.

   NOTE: The next time you start an indoor climbing activity, the device uses this grading system. You can hold , select the activity settings, and select **Grading System** to change the system.
5 Select the difficulty level for the route.
6 Press .
7 Start your first route.

   NOTE: When the route timer is running, the device automatically locks the buttons to prevent accidental button presses. You can hold any button to unlock the watch.
8 When you finish the route, descend to the ground.

   The rest timer starts automatically when you are on the ground.

   NOTE: If necessary, you can press to finish the route.
9 Select an option:
   - To save a successful route, select **Completed**.
   - To save an unsuccessful route, select **Attempted**.
   - To delete the route, select **Discard**.
10 Enter the number of falls for the route.
11 When you are done resting, press and begin your next route.
12 Repeat this process for each route until your activity is complete.
13 Press .
14 Select **Save**.

Diving

Dive Warnings

⚠ WARNING

- The diving features of this device are for use by certified divers only. This device should not be used as a sole dive computer. Failure to input the appropriate dive-related information into the device can lead to serious personal injury or death.
- Do not exceed the maximum dive depth rating for the device (*Specifications*, page 153).
- Make sure that you fully understand the use, displays, and limitations of your device. If you have questions about this manual or the device, always resolve any discrepancies or confusion before diving with the device. Always remember that you are responsible for your own safety.
- There is always a risk of decompression illness (DCI) for any dive profile even if you follow the dive plan provided by the dive tables or a diving device. No procedure, diving device, or dive table will eliminate the possibility of DCI or oxygen toxicity. An individual's physiological makeup can vary from day to day. This device cannot account for these variations. You are strongly advised to remain well within the limits provided by this device to minimize the risk of DCI. You should consult a physician regarding your fitness before diving.
- Always use backup instruments, including a depth gauge, submersible pressure gauge, and timer or watch. You should have access to decompression tables when diving with this device.
- Perform pre-dive safety checks, such as checking proper device function and settings, display function, battery level, tank pressure, and bubble checks to check hoses and connections for leaks.
- This device should not be shared between multiple users for diving purposes. Diver profiles are user specific, and using another diver's profile can result in misleading information that could lead to injury or death.

- For safety reasons, you should never dive alone. Dive with a designated buddy, even if you have someone monitoring your dive from the surface. You should also stay with others for an extended time after a dive, because the potential onset of decompression illness (DCI) may be delayed or triggered by surface activities.
- Apnea diving requires appropriate training. Pool apnea diving carries many of the same risks as apnea diving in open water. Never dive alone.
- This device is not intended for commercial or professional dive activities. It is for recreational purposes only. Commercial or professional dive activities can expose the user to extreme depths or conditions that increase the risk of DCI.
- Do not dive with a gas if you have not personally verified its contents and input the analyzed value to the device. Failure to verify tank contents and input the appropriate gas values to the device will result in incorrect dive planning information and could result in serious injury or death.
- Diving with more than one gas mixture presents a much greater risk than diving with a single gas mixture. Mistakes related to the use of multiple gas mixtures may lead to serious injury or death.
- Always ensure a safe ascent. A rapid ascent increases the risk of DCI.
- Disabling the deco lockout feature on the device can result in an increased risk of DCI, which can result in personal injury or death. Disable this feature at your own risk.
- Violating a required decompression stop may result in serious injury or death. Never ascend above the displayed decompression stop depth.
- Always perform a safety stop between 3 and 5 meters (9.8 and 16.4 feet) for 3 minutes, even if no decompression stop is required.

Going Diving

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities**.
3. Select **Diving**, and select **Scuba Dive** or **Apnea Dive**.

   NOTE: The first time you do a diving activity, you must select the **Diving** category before choosing a dive type. The selected dive type is added to your favorite activities list (*Customizing Your Favorite Activities List*, page 66).
4. While keeping your wrist out of the water, wait until the watch acquires GPS signals and the status bar is filled (optional).

   The watch requires GPS signals to save your dive entry location.
5. Review the settings on the dive pre-check screen, and press until the primary dive data screen appears.

   NOTE: If necessary, you can press to edit the dive activity options, such as the gas, water type, and alerts.
6. Descend to start your dive.

   The activity timer starts automatically when you reach a depth of 1.2 m (4 ft.).

   NOTE: If you start a dive without selecting a dive mode, the watch uses the most recently selected dive mode and settings, and your dive entry location is not saved.
7. Select an option:
   - Press to scroll through the data screens and dive compass.
   - Press to view the in-dive menu.
8. When you are ready to end the dive, ascend to the surface.

   Your rate of ascent appears on the gauge.

Green	Good. Ascent is less than 7.9 m (26 ft.) per minute.
Yellow	Moderately high. Ascent is between 7.9 and 10.1 m (26 and 33 ft.) per minute.
Red	Too high. Ascent is greater than 10.1 m (33 ft.) per minute.

9. Keep your wrist out of the water until the watch acquires GPS signals and saves your dive exit location (optional).
10. Select an option:
    - For a **Scuba Dive** activity, wait for the **Auto Save Timeout** timer to count down.

      NOTE: When you ascend to 1 m (3.3 ft.), the **Auto Save Timeout** timer begins counting down. You can press , and select **Stop Dive** to save the dive before the timer finishes counting down.
    - For an **Apnea Dive** activity, press , and select **Stop Dive**.

The watch saves the dive activity.

Navigating with the Dive Compass

1 During a **Scuba Dive** activity, press to view the dive compass.

2 Press , and select **Compass** > **Set Heading** to set the heading.
The compass indicates your directional heading with a green mark.
TIP: You can quickly set the heading by holding and .

3 Press , and select **Compass**.

4 Select an option:
- To set the heading again, select **Change Heading**.
- To change the heading by 180 degrees, select **Set to Recip.**.
  NOTE: The compass indicates the reciprocal heading with a red mark.
- To set to a 90-degree heading left or right, select **Set to 90L** or **Set to 90R**.
- To delete the heading, select **Clear Heading**.

Performing a Safety Stop

You should perform a safety stop during every dive to help reduce the risk of decompression sickness.

1 After a dive of at least 11 m (35 ft.), ascend to 5 m (15 ft.).
Safety stop information appears on the data screens.

1	The safety stop ceiling depth.
2	The safety stop timer. When you are within 1 m (5 ft.) of the ceiling depth, the timer starts counting down.

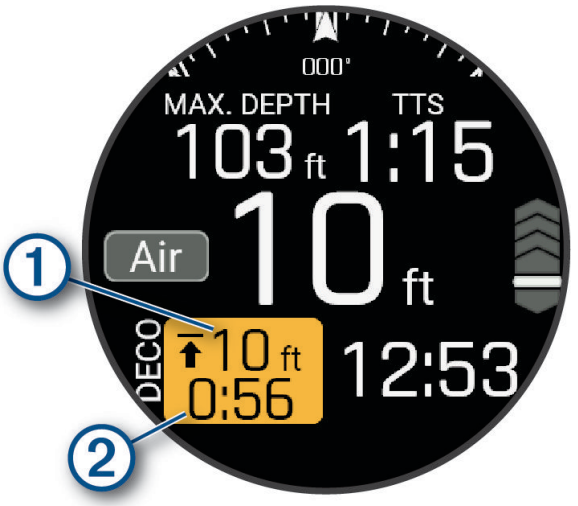
2 Stay within 2 m (8 ft.) of the safety stop ceiling depth until the safety stop timer reaches zero.
NOTE: If you ascend more than 3 m (8 ft.) above the safety stop ceiling depth, the safety stop timer pauses, and the device alerts you to descend below the ceiling depth. If you descend below 11 m (35 ft.), the safety stop timer resets.

3 Continue ascending to the surface.

Performing a Decompression Stop

You should always perform all the required decompression stops during a dive to help reduce the risk of decompression sickness. Missing a decompression stop adds significant risk.

1 When you exceed the no-decompression limit (NDL) time, begin your ascent.
Decompression stop information appears on the data screens.



①	The decompression stop ceiling depth.
②	The decompression stop timer.

2 Stay within 0.6 m (2 ft.) of the decompression stop ceiling depth until the decompression stop timer reaches zero.

NOTE: If you ascend more than 0.6 m (2 ft.) above the decompression stop ceiling depth, the decompression stop timer pauses, and the device alerts you to descend below the ceiling depth. The depth and ceiling depth flash red until you are within the safe margin.

3 Continue ascending to the surface or the next decompression stop.

Exceeding the Depth Limit

⚠ WARNING

If your watch exceeds its dive depth rating of 40 m (131.2 ft) and a dive depth limit of 45 m (147.6 ft), the watch will stop reporting depth measurements until you ascend above the depth limit.

NOTICE

If your watch exceeds the depth limit of 45 m (147.6 ft) during a dive, you will be unable to start any additional scuba diving activities for the next 24 hours.

Your watch is dive certified up to a dive depth rating of 40 m (131.2 ft.). When you exceed a dive depth limit of 45 m (147.6 ft.), an alert appears, the watch stops reporting the depth, and **No Guidance** appears on the screen. When you ascend above 45 m (147.6 ft.), the watch continues reporting the depth. Information that requires accurate tissue loading is unavailable for the remainder of the dive, including no decompression limit (NDL) time, stop times, and time to surface (TTS).

After exceeding the depth limit in a dive, the **Scuba Dive** activity is unavailable for 24 hours to prevent inaccurate guidance. You cannot disable the **Deco Lockout** feature after violating the dive depth rating of the watch (*Advanced Dive Settings*, page 57).

Dive Settings

You can customize the dive settings based on your needs. Not all settings are applicable for all dive modes.

From the watch face, press , select **Activities**, select a dive activity, press , and select the activity settings.

Advanced Settings: Customizes advanced settings for diving activities (*Advanced Dive Settings*, page 57).

Apnea Discipline: Sets the discipline type for apnea diving.

Auto Save Timeout: Sets the length of time before the watch ends and saves a dive after surfacing.

Conservatism: Sets the level of conservatism for decompression calculations for scuba diving. Higher conservatism provides a shorter bottom time and a longer ascent time.

Display Settings: Sets the screen brightness and timeout for diving activities.

Gas: Sets the gas blend used for scuba diving.

PO2: Sets the partial pressure of oxygen (PO2) thresholds, in bar, for warnings and critical alerts for scuba diving (*Dive Alerts*, page 59). The PO2 Warning value is the threshold for the highest oxygen concentration level that you are comfortable reaching. The PO2 Critical value is the threshold for the maximum oxygen concentration level that you should reach.

Pool Mode: Enables pool mode for scuba diving. When the watch is in pool dive mode, the decompression lockout feature functions normally, but dives are not saved to the dive log.

Safety Stop: Sets the safety stop duration for scuba diving.

Setup Sharing: Sends or receives dive computer settings between compatible devices (*Sharing Dive Settings Between Devices*, page 58). For example, you can share settings between your primary and backup dive computers, or your dive computer and that of another user, such as an instructor.

Water Type: Set the water type for diving activities.

Advanced Dive Settings

You can customize the dive settings based on your needs. Not all settings are applicable for all dive modes.

From the watch face, press , select **Activities**, select a dive activity, press , select the activity settings, and select Advanced Settings.

Auto Dive: Automatically starts a dive activity based on your last dive type when you begin your descent. You can use the Snooze option to temporarily disable this feature.

Compass: Calibrates and sets the north reference for the compass (*Calibrating the Compass Manually*, page 149).

Deco Lockout: Enables the decompression lockout feature. This feature prevents scuba dives for 24 hours if you violate a decompression ceiling for more than three minutes.

NOTE: You can still disable the decompression lockout feature after violating a decompression ceiling. You cannot disable the decompression lockout feature after violating the dive depth limit of the watch (*Exceeding the Depth Limit*, page 56).

Double Tap to Scroll: Scrolls through the dive data screens when you double tap the watch. If you notice accidental scrolling, you can use the Sensitivity option to adjust the responsiveness.

Satellites: Sets the satellite system to use for dive entry and exit locations (*Satellite Settings*, page 72).

Tissue Loading: Displays and allows you to manage your tissue load data. You can transfer your tissue load data to another device (*Sharing Dive Settings Between Devices*, page 58), or you can reset your tissue load data (*Resetting All Default Settings*, page 152).

UP Key: Disables the button during dive activities to prevent inadvertent button presses.

Wrist Heart Rate: Enables the wrist-based heart rate monitor for dives.

Sharing Dive Settings Between Devices

NOTICE

It is your responsibility to use discretion when sharing information with others. Always ensure you are aware of and comfortable with the individual with whom you share information.

You can transfer dive settings between two dive computers. For example, you can share settings between your primary and backup dive computers, or your dive computer and that of another user, such as an instructor.

1. Bring both dive computers within 3 m (10 ft.) of each other.
2. On both dive computers, select an option based on the model:
   - On the home screen, select **Dive Setup** > **Setup Sharing**.
   - From the watch face, hold , and select **Dive Setup** > **Setup Sharing**.
   - From the watch face, press , select **Activities**, select a dive activity, select the activity settings, and select **Setup Sharing**.

   TIP: You perform a separate transfer for tissue load data from the dive mode Advanced Settings menu.
3. On both dive computers, select , and select an option for setup sharing on the pre-dive screen (optional).
4. On both dive computers, select an option:
   - To receive dive settings, wait while the other dive computer sends the data.
   - To send dive settings, press , wait until your dive computer connects to the other device, and select the device.
5. On both dive computers, confirm the data transfer (if necessary).
6. On the dive computer receiving the data, select an option:
   - To view and accept some of the updated settings, select **Review**, and select the settings to apply.
   - To accept and apply all the new settings, select **Apply All**.
   - To reject the new settings, select **Decline**.

The dive computer receiving the data performs a simulated dive test to confirm the new settings and tissue load. If there is an issue with the data sharing process, the dive computer receiving the data provides more details about the issue (*Troubleshooting for Dive Setup Sharing*, page 160).

Altitude Diving

At higher altitudes, the atmospheric pressure is lower, and your body contains a larger amount of nitrogen than it would at the start of a dive at sea level. The dive computer accounts for altitude changes automatically using the barometric pressure sensor. The absolute pressure value used by the decompression model is not affected by the altitude or the gauge pressure displayed on the dive computer.

Custom Dive Alerts

You can set custom dive alerts to help you train toward a specific goal or to increase your awareness of your environment.

Alert Name	Dive Mode	Description
Depth	Scuba dive or apnea dive	The alert occurs when you reach the selected depth.
Neutral Buoyancy	Apnea dive	The alert occurs when you reach the selected depth.
Start/Stop	Apnea dive	The alert occurs when you start or stop a dive.
Surface Timer	Apnea dive	The alert occurs when the selected time interval elapses.
Target Depth	Apnea dive	The alert occurs when you reach the selected depth.
Time	Scuba dive or apnea dive	The alert occurs when the selected time interval elapses.
Variometer	Apnea dive	The alert occurs every time you reach the selected depth interval.

Dive Alerts

Alert Message	Cause	Watch Action
None	You completed the decompression stop.	The decompression stop depth and time flash blue for five seconds.
None	Your partial pressure of oxygen (PO2) value is above the specified warning value.	Your PO2 value flashes yellow.
%1 OTU accumulated. End your dive now.	Your oxygen toxicity units are above the safe limit. During a dive, "%1" is replaced with the number of units accumulated.	The alert appears every two minutes, up to three times.
%1 OTU accumulated.	Your oxygen toxicity units (OTU) are nearing the safe limit.	None
Approaching Deco Stop	You are within one stop interval (3 m or 9.8 ft.) of the decompression stop depth.	None
Approaching NDL	You have 10 minutes of no decompression limit (NDL) time remaining.	The alert appears again when you have 5 minutes of NDL time remaining.
Ascending too fast. Slow your ascent.	You are ascending faster than 9.1 m/min. (30 ft./min.) for more than 5 seconds.	None
Battery critically low. End your dive now.	Less than 10% battery power remains.	The alert appears when the watch is below 10% battery power and on the dive pre-check screen for your next dive.
Battery is low.	Less than 20% battery power remains.	The alert appears when the watch is below 20% battery power and on the dive pre-check screen for your next dive.
Deco/NDL guidance unavailable.	You have exceeded the dive depth limit for the watch.	Information that requires accurate tissue loading is unavailable for the remainder of the dive, including NDL time, stop times, and time to surface (TTS). The NDL field is replaced with a warning message.
Decompression Cleared	You completed all decompression stops.	None
Descend below deco ceiling.	You are more than 0.6 m (2 ft.) above the decompression ceiling.	The current depth and stop depth flash red. If you remain above the decompression ceiling for more than three minutes, the decompression lockout feature goes into effect.
Descend to complete safety stop.	You are more than 2 m (8 ft.) above the safety stop ceiling.	The current depth and stop depth flash yellow.
Dive will end in %1 seconds.	The watch will automatically end and save the dive. During a dive, "%1" is replaced by the number of seconds.	None
Do not dive. Failed to read depth sensor.	The watch has invalid or missing depth sensor data before you start a dive activity.	Do not start a dive. Call Garmin® Product Support.
Failed to read depth sensor. End your dive now.	The watch has invalid or missing depth sensor data after you have started a dive activity.	Use a backup dive computer or dive plan and end your dive. Call Garmin Product Support.
NDL exceeded. Decompression now required.	You have exceeded your NDL time.	The watch begins providing decompression stop guidance.
PO2 is high.	Your PO2 value is above the specified critical value.	Your PO2 value flashes red. The alert appears every 30 seconds, up to three times, until you ascend to a safe level.
Safety Stop Cleared	You completed the safety stop.	None
Safety Stop Started	You ascended above 6 m (20 ft.) without other decompression guidance.	The safety stop countdown timer begins, if configured.
Watch rebooted. Evaluate dive conditions.	The watch rebooted during the dive.	The watch simulates the dive for the time it was rebooting. Since other alerts may not have been triggered, evaluate your current depth and dive conditions.

Winter Sports

Viewing Your Ski Runs

Your watch records the details of each downhill skiing or snowboarding run using the auto run feature. This feature is turned on by default for downhill skiing and snowboarding. It automatically records new ski runs when you start moving down hill.

1. Start a skiing or snowboarding activity.
2. Hold •.
3. Select **View Runs**.
4. Press • and to view details of your last run, your current run, and your total runs.
   The run screens include time, distance traveled, maximum speed, average speed, and total descent.

Recording a Backcountry Skiing or Snowboarding Activity

The backcountry skiing or snowboarding activity lets you switch between climbing and descending tracking modes so you can accurately track your statistics. You can customize the Mode Tracking setting to automatically or manually switch tracking modes (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select an option:
   - Select **Activities** > **Winter Sports** > **Backcountry Ski**.
   - Select **Activities** > **Winter Sports** > **Backcountry Snowboard**.
3. Select an option:
   - If you are starting your activity on a climb, select **Climbing**.
   - If you are starting your activity moving downhill, select **Descending**.
4. Press to start the activity timer.
5. If necessary, press to switch between climbing and descending tracking modes.
6. After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Cross-Country Skiing Power Data

NOTE: The HRM-Pro™ series accessory must be paired to the D2™ Mach 2 watch using ANT+® technology.

You can use your compatible D2 Mach 2 watch paired with the HRM-Pro series accessory to provide real-time feedback about your cross-country skiing performance. The power output is measured in watts. Factors that affect power include your speed, elevation changes, wind, and snow conditions. You can use power output to measure and improve your skiing performance.

NOTE: Skiing power values are generally lower than cycling power values. This is normal and occurs because humans are less efficient at skiing than they are at cycling. It is common for ski power values to be 30 to 40 percent lower than cycling power values at the same training intensity.

Water Sports

Viewing Your Water Sport Runs

NOTE: This feature is not available for all water sport activity types.

Your watch records the details of each water sport run using the auto run feature. This feature automatically records new runs based on your movement. The activity timer pauses when you stop moving. The activity timer starts automatically when your movement speed increases. You can view run details from the paused screen or while the activity timer is running.

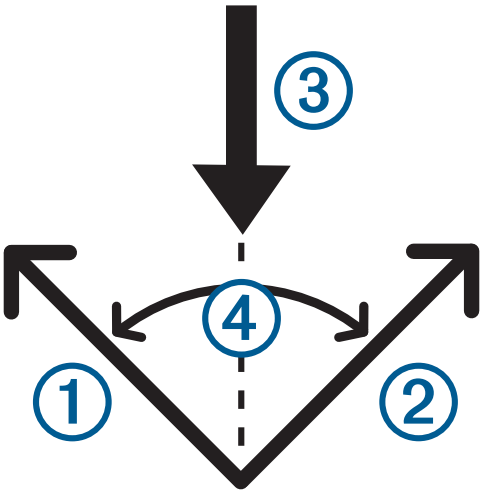
1. Start a water sport activity.
2. Hold •.
3. Select **View Runs**.
4. Press • and to view details of your last run, your current run, and your total runs.
   The run screens include time, distance traveled, maximum speed, and average speed.

Sailing
Tack Assist

⚠ CAUTION

The watch uses GPS-based course over ground to determine your course in the tack assist feature, and does not account for other factors that can affect your boat's direction, such as currents and tides. You are responsible for the safe and prudent operation of your vessel.

While cruising or racing into the wind, the tack assist feature can help you determine if your boat is being lifted or headed. When you calibrate tack assist, the watch captures your course over ground (COG) when on starboard tack ① and when on port tack ②. The watch uses the average of the two values to estimate the mean true wind direction ③ and the boat's tack angle ④.



The watch uses this data to determine whether your boat is being lifted or headed due to wind shifts.

By default, the tack assist feature is set to automatic. Each time you calibrate the port or starboard COG, the watch recalibrates the opposite side and true wind direction. You can change the tack assist settings to enter a fixed tack angle or true wind direction.

Tips for Getting the Best Lift Estimate

To get the best lift estimate when using the tack assist feature, you can try these tips. See *Setting the True Wind Direction*, page 62 and *Calibrating the Tack Assist*, page 61 for more information.

- Enter a fixed tack angle, and calibrate the port tack.
- Enter a fixed tack angle, and calibrate the starboard tack.
- Reset the tack angle, and calibrate both the port and starboard side.

Calibrating the Tack Assist

You can calibrate the port, starboard, or both sides of the vessel for the tack assist feature.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities** > **Water Sports**.
3. Select **Sail** or **Sail Race**.
4. Press •⌚ or ⌚• to view the tack assist screen.

   NOTE: You may need to add the tack assist screen to the data screens for the activity (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).
5. Select **CONTROLS**.
6. Select an option:
   - To calibrate the starboard side, select **STARBOARD**.
   - To calibrate the port side, select **PORT**.

   TIP: If the wind is coming from the starboard side of the vessel, you should calibrate starboard. If the wind is coming from the port side of the vessel, you should calibrate port.
7. Wait while the device calibrates the tack assist.

   An arrow appears and indicates if your boat is being lifted or headed.
8. (Optional) Repeat steps 6 and 7 for the other side of the vessel.

9 Press ◯ when the calibration is complete.

Entering a Fixed Tack Angle

If you use the tack assist to calibrate only one side of the vessel, you should manually enter the tack angle.

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select **Activities** > **Water Sports**.
3 Select **Sail** or **Sail Race**.
4 Hold •◯.
5 Select **Tack Angle** > **Angle**.
6 Enter the value.

Setting the True Wind Direction

If you use the tack assist to calibrate only one side of the vessel, you should manually enter the true wind direction. If you calibrate both sides of the vessel, you should configure the watch to automatically set the true wind direction.

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select **Activities** > **Water Sports**.
3 Select **Sail** or **Sail Race**.
4 Hold •◯.
5 Select **True Wind Direction**.
6 Select an option:
   - Select **Auto**.
   - Select **Fixed**, and enter a value.

Sail Racing

You can use the device to help you cross the start line of a race exactly when the race begins. When you synchronize the regatta timer in the sail racing app with the official race countdown timer, you are alerted at one-minute intervals as the race start approaches. When you set the starting line, the device uses GPS data to indicate whether your boat will cross the start line before, after, or at the correct time to start the race.

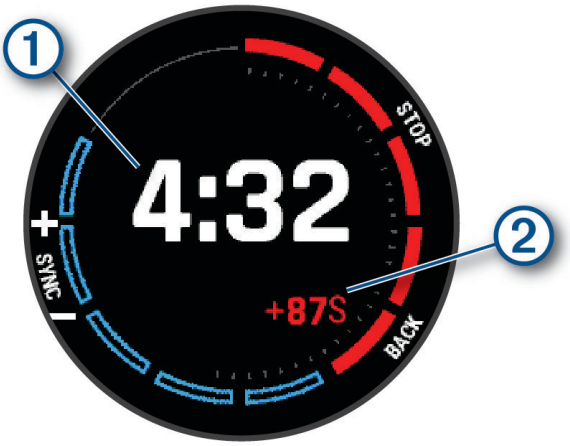
Setting the Starting Line

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select **Activities** > **Water Sports** > **Sail Race**.
3 Wait while the device locates satellites.
4 Hold •◯.
5 Select **Start Line Settings**.
6 Select an option:
   - Select **Mark Port** to mark the port starting line mark as you sail past it.
   - Select **Mark Starboard** to mark the starboard starting line mark as you sail past it.
   - Select **Time to Burn** to enable or disable the time to burn data on the regatta timer data screen.
   - Select **Distance to Start** to set the distance to the start line, preferred distance units, and length of your boat.

Starting a Race

Before you can view the time to burn, you must set the starting line (*Setting the Starting Line*, page 62).

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select **Activities** > **Water Sports** > **Sail Race**.
3 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
   The screen displays the regatta timer ① and time to burn ②.



4 If necessary, hold •◯, and select an option:
   - To set a fixed timer, select **Regatta Time** > **Fixed**, and enter a length of time.
   - To set a start time within the next 24 hours, select **Regatta Time** > **GPS**, and enter a time of day.
5 Press ◯•.
6 Press •◯ and ◯• to synchronize the regatta timer with the official race countdown.
   NOTE: When the burn time is negative, you will arrive at the start line after the race starts. When the burn time is positive, you will arrive at the start line before the race starts.
7 Press ◯• to start the activity timer.

Other Activities

Recording a Breathwork Activity

1 From the watch face, press ◯•.
2 Select **Activities** > **Other** > **Breathwork**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Coherence** to achieve a state of calm alertness.
   - Select **Relax and Focus** to relax your body and focus the mind.
   - Select **Relax and Focus (Short)** to relax your body and focus the mind in a shorter time frame.
   - Select **Tranquility** to lower your stress level and get ready for sleep.
4 If necessary, select **Do Workout**.
5 Press ◯• to start the activity.
6 Follow the on-screen instructions as the watch guides you through the breathing exercises.
7 Press ◯• to skip to the next step in the breathwork phase.
8 After you complete your activity, press ◯•, and select **Save**.
   Your average respiration rate and heart rate appear.
9 Press ◯•.
10 Select **All Stats**.
   Your average heart rate, maximum heart rate, average respiration rate, and stress change appear.

Recording a Meditation Activity

You can use a guided session or create your own meditation activity.

1 From the watch face, press ◯•.
2 Select **Activities** > **Other** > **Meditation**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Free** to record an open, unstructured meditation activity.
   - Select **Session** to follow a guided session with audio.
   - Select **Custom** to create a custom session with audio.

4 If necessary, press , or follow the on-screen instructions.
5 Press to start the activity timer.
The watch displays a countdown timer or intention.
6 Select an option:
- Select to listen to the meditation audio from the external speaker and set the speaker volume.
- Connect your headphones to listen to the meditation audio (*Connecting Bluetooth® Headphones*, page 142).

NOTE: Notifications are disabled during the meditation activity.
7 After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Gaming

Using the Garmin GameOn™ App

When you pair your watch with your computer, you can record a gaming activity on your watch and view real-time performance metrics on your computer.

1 On your computer, go to **www.overwolf.com/app/Garmin-Garmin_GameOn** and download the Garmin GameOn app.
2 Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation.
3 Launch the Garmin GameOn app.
4 When the Garmin GameOn app prompts you to pair your watch, press , and select **Activities** > **Other** > **Gaming** on your watch.
NOTE: While your watch is connected to the Garmin GameOn app, notifications and other Bluetooth® features are disabled on the watch.
5 Select **Pair Now**.
6 Select your watch from the list, and follow the on-screen instructions.
TIP: You can click > **Settings** to customize your settings, reread the tutorial, or remove a watch. The Garmin GameOn app remembers your watch and settings the next time you open the app. If necessary, you can pair your watch to another computer (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).
7 Select an option:
- On your computer, start a supported game to automatically start the gaming activity.
- On your watch, start a manual gaming activity (*Recording a Manual Gaming Activity*, page 64).

The Garmin GameOn app shows your real-time performance metrics. When you complete your activity, the Garmin GameOn app displays your gaming activity summary and match information.

Recording a Manual Gaming Activity

You can record a gaming activity on your watch and manually enter stats for each match.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities** > **Other** > **Gaming**.
3 Press , and select a game type.
4 Press to start the activity timer.
5 Press at the end of the match to record your match result or placement.
6 Press to start a new match.
7 After you complete your activity, press , and select **Save**.

Jumpmaster

⚠ WARNING

The jumpmaster feature is for use by experienced skydivers only. The jumpmaster feature should not be used as a primary skydiving altimeter. Failure to input the appropriate jump related information can lead to serious personal injury or death.

The jumpmaster feature follows military guidelines for calculating the high altitude release point (HARP). The watch detects automatically when you have jumped to begin navigating toward the desired impact point (DIP) using the barometer and electronic compass.

Planning a Jump

1 Select a jump type (*Jump Types*, page 65).

2 Enter the jump information (*Entering Jump Information*, page 65).
The device calculates the HARP.
3 Select **Go To HARP** to start navigation to the HARP.

Jump Types

The jumpmaster feature allows you to set the jump type to one of three types: HAHO, HALO, or Static. The jump type selected determines what additional setup information is required. For all jump types, drop altitudes and opening altitudes are measured in feet above ground level (AGL).

HAHO: High Altitude High Opening. The jumpmaster jumps from a very high altitude and opens the parachute at a high altitude. You must set a DIP and a drop altitude of at least 1,000 feet. The drop altitude is assumed to be the same as the opening altitude. Common values for a drop altitude range from 12,000 to 24,000 feet AGL.

HALO: High Altitude Low Opening. The jumpmaster jumps from a very high altitude and opens the parachute at a low altitude. The required information is the same as the HAHO jump type, plus an opening altitude. The opening altitude must not be greater than the drop altitude. Common values for an opening altitude range from 2,000 to 6,000 feet AGL.

Static: The wind speed and direction are assumed to be constant for the duration of the jump. The drop altitude must be at least 1,000 feet.

Entering Jump Information

1 Press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Jumpmaster**.
3 Select a jump type (*Jump Types*, page 65).
4 Complete one or more actions to enter your jump information:
- Select **DIP** to set a waypoint for the desired landing location.
- Select **Drop Alt.** to set the drop altitude AGL (in feet) when the jumpmaster exits the aircraft.
- Select **Open Alt** to set the open altitude AGL (in feet) when the jumpmaster opens the parachute.
- Select **Forward Throw** to set the horizontal distance traveled (in meters) due to aircraft speed.
- Select **Crs. to HARP** to set the direction traveled (in degrees) due to aircraft speed.
- Select **Wind** to set the wind speed (in knots) and direction (in degrees).
- Select **Constant** to fine-tune some information for the planned jump. Depending on the jump type, you can select **Percent Max.**, **Safety Factor**, **K-Open**, **K-Freefall**, or **K-Static** and enter additional information (*Constant Settings*, page 66).
- Select **Auto to DIP** to enable navigation to the DIP automatically after you jump.
- Select **Go To HARP** to start navigation to the HARP.

Entering Wind Information for HAHO and HALO Jumps

1 Press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Jumpmaster**.
3 Select a jump type (*Jump Types*, page 65).
4 Select **Wind** > **Add**.
5 Select an altitude.
6 Enter a wind speed in knots and select **Done**.
7 Enter a wind direction in degrees and select **Done**.
The wind value is added to the list. Only wind values included in the list are used in calculations.
8 Repeat steps 5–7 for each available altitude.

Resetting Wind Information

1 Press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Jumpmaster**.
3 Select **HAHO** or **HALO**.
4 Select **Wind** > **Reset**.

All wind values are removed from the list.

Entering Wind Information for a Static Jump

1 Press ⌚.

2 Select **Activities** > **Outdoor** > **Jumpmaster** > **Static** > **Wind**.
3 Enter a wind speed in knots and select **Done**.
4 Enter a wind direction in degrees and select **Done**.

Constant Settings

Select Jumpmaster, select a jump type, and select Constant.

Percent Max.: Sets the jump range for all jump types. A setting less than 100% decreases the drift distance to the DIP, and a setting greater than 100% increases the drift distance. More experienced jumpmasters may want to use smaller numbers, and less experienced skydivers may want to use larger numbers.

Safety Factor: Sets the margin of error for a jump (HAHO only). Safety factors are usually integer values of two or greater, and are determined by the jumpmaster based on specifications for the jump.

K-Freefall: Sets the wind drag value for a parachute during freefall, based on the parachute canopy rating (HALO only). Each parachute should be labeled with a K value.

K-Open: Sets the wind drag value for an open parachute, based on the parachute canopy rating (HAHO and HALO). Each parachute should be labeled with a K value.

K-Static: Sets the wind drag value for a parachute during a static jump, based on the parachute canopy rating (Static only). Each parachute should be labeled with a K value.

Customizing Activities and Apps

You can customize the activities and apps list, data screens, data fields, and other settings.

Customizing the App List

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Edit**.
3 Select an option:
- To change the location of an app in the list, select an app, press or to move the app, and press to select the new location.
- To remove an app from the list, select the app, and select .
- To add an app, select **Add**, and select one or more apps.

Customizing Your Favorite Activities List

Your favorite activities list appears at the top of the list, and it provides quick access to the activities you use frequently. You can add or remove favorite activities at any time.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**.
Your favorite activities appear at the top of the list.
3 Select **Edit**.
4 Select an option:
- To change the location of an activity in the list, select an activity, press or to move the activity, and press to select the new location.
- To remove a favorite activity, select the activity, and select > **Remove**.
- To add a favorite activity, select **Add**, and select one or more activities.

Pinning a Favorite Activity to the List

You can pin up to three favorite activities to the top of the app and activity lists.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**.
3 Scroll to a favorite activity (*Customizing Your Favorite Activities List*, page 66).
4 Hold , and select **Pin Activity**.

The next time you press from the watch face to open the app and activity lists, the pinned activity appears at the top of the list.

Customizing the Data Screens

You can show, hide, and change the layout and content of data screens for each activity.

1 From the watch face, press .

2 Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3 Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4 Select **Data Screens**.
5 Scroll to the data screen you want to customize.
6 Select ✎.
7 Select an option:
   - Select **Layout** to adjust the number of data fields on the data screen.
   - Select **Data Fields**, and select a field to change the data that appears in the field.
     TIP: For a list of all the available data fields, go to *Data Fields*, page 166. Not all data fields are available for all activity types.
   - Select **Reorder** to change the location of the data screen in the loop.
   - Select **Remove** to remove the data screen from the loop.

   NOTE: Not all options are available for dive activities.
8 If necessary, select **Add New** to add a data screen to the loop.
   You can add a custom data screen, or select one of the predefined data screens.

Adding the Map Data Screen

You can add the map to the data screens loop for a GPS activity.

1 From the watch face, press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities**, and select a GPS activity.
3 Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4 Select **Data Screens** > **Add New** > **Map**.

Creating a Custom Activity

1 From the watch face, press ⌚.
2 Select **Activities** > **Edit** > **Add**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Copy Activity** to create your custom activity starting from one of your saved activities.
   - Select **Other** > **Other** to create a new custom activity.
4 If necessary, select an activity type.
5 Select a name or enter a custom name.
   Duplicate activity names include a number, for example: Bike(2).
6 Select an option:
   - Select an option to customize specific activity settings. For example, you can customize the data screens or auto features.
   - Select **Done** to save and use the custom activity.

Activity Settings

These settings allow you to customize each preloaded activity based on your needs. For example, you can customize data screens and enable alerts and training features. Not all settings are available for all activity types. Some activity types have separate settings lists (*Golf Settings*, page 39, *Dive Settings*, page 57).

From the watch face, press ⌚, select **Activities**, select an activity, press ⌚, and select the activity settings.

3D Distance: Calculates your distance traveled using your elevation change as well as your horizontal movement over ground.

3D Speed: Calculates your speed using your elevation change as well as your horizontal movement over ground.

Accent Color: Sets the accent color for the activity icon.

Add Activity: Adds an activity type to a multisport activity.

Alerts: Sets the training or navigation alerts for the activity (*Activity Alerts*, page 70).

Altimeter Settings: Displays the flight altitude based on the nearest meteorological aerodrome report (METAR) location or manual adjustment (*Setting the Barometric Pressure Manually*, page 35).

Audio Output: Sets the audio device to use for voice alerts (*Playing Voice Alerts During an Activity*, page 71).

Auto Climb: Detects elevation changes using the built-in altimeter and automatically displays relevant climb data (*Enabling Auto Climb*, page 72).

Auto Fly: Starts a Fly activity automatically when the watch detects a flight. You can adjust the climb rate sensitivity and enable Garmin Pilot™ app data to prevent false detections.

Auto Lap: Sets the options for the Auto Lap® feature to automatically mark laps. The **By Distance** option marks laps at a specific distance. The **By Position** option marks laps at a location where you previously pressed ◯. The **Auto Select** option triggers lap alerts on mile or kilometer course points when running a course with timing gates, such as some certified marathons, or at the distance set in the **Auto Distance** setting. When you complete a lap, a customizable lap alert message appears. This feature is helpful for comparing your performance over different parts of an activity.

TIP: You can create your own course with timing gates by turning on Auto Lap by Timing Gates when you create a course on the Garmin Connect™ app (*Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™*, page 135).

Auto Pause: Sets the options for the Auto Pause® feature to stop recording data when you stop moving or when you drop below a specified speed. This feature is helpful if your activity includes stop lights or other places where you must stop.

Auto Rest: Automatically creates a rest interval when you stop moving during a pool swim activity (*Swim Auto Rest and Manual Rest*, page 49). Sets the options for automatically starting and stopping the rest timer for the ultra run activity (*Ultra Run Auto Rest Settings*, page 46).

Auto Run: Automatically detects ski or water sport runs using the built-in accelerometer (*Viewing Your Ski Runs*, page 60, *Viewing Your Water Sport Runs*, page 60).

Auto Scroll: Automatically scrolls through all of the activity data screens while the activity timer is running.

Auto Set: Automatically starts and stops exercise sets during a strength training activity.

Auto Sport Change: Automatically detects a transition to the next sport in a multisport activity, such as a triathlon.

Auto Start: Automatically starts a motocross or BMX activity when you start moving.

Broadcast Heart Rate: Automatically broadcasts heart rate data from your watch to paired devices when you start the activity (*Broadcasting Heart Rate Data*, page 126).

Broadcast to GameOn: Automatically broadcasts biometrics data to the Garmin GameOn™ app when you start a gaming activity (*Using the Garmin GameOn™ App*, page 64).

ClimbPro: Displays ascent information for upcoming and current climbs while navigating a course (*Using ClimbPro*, page 71).

Countdown Start: Enables a countdown timer before the activity timer starts.

Data Screens: Customizes data screens and adds new data screens for the activity (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

Edit Weight: Prompts you to add the weight used for an exercise set during a strength training or cardio activity.

Ending Alerts: Sets an alert for two or five minutes before the end of your meditation activity.

Flashlight Strobe: Sets the LED flashlight strobe mode, speed, and color during the activity.

Gear Selection: After you complete an activity, prompts you to select the gear or equipment you used during the activity. You can add and delete gear in your Garmin Connect account (*Garmin Connect™*, page 118).

Grading System: Sets the grading system for rating the route difficulty for a rock climbing activity.

In-flight Alerts: Sets the aviation alerts for the flight activity (*Setting Aviation Alerts*, page 35).

Jump Mode: Sets the jump rope activity target to a set time, number of reps, or open ended.

Lane Number: Sets your lane number for track running.

Laps: Configures the settings for the **Auto Lap**, **Lap Key**, and **Lap Alert** options.

Lap Alert: Sets the data fields to show for laps.

Lap Key: Enables the ◯ button for recording a lap or rest during an activity. You can also define the default behavior for the ◯ button for some activity types, such as multisport.

Lock Device: Locks the touchscreen and buttons during a multisport activity to prevent inadvertent button presses and touchscreen swipes.

Map Settings: Sets the display preferences for the map data screen for the activity (*Map Settings*, page 130).

Map Layers: Sets the map data to show on the map (*Showing and Hiding Map Data*, page 132).

Metronome: Plays tones or vibrates at a steady rhythm to help you improve your performance by training at a faster, slower, or more consistent cadence. You can set the beats per minute (bpm) of the cadence you want to maintain, beat frequency, and sound settings.

Mode Tracking: Sets the ascent and descent tracking mode to automatic or manual for backcountry skiing and snowboarding.

Obstacle Tracking: Saves obstacle locations from your first loop of the course. On repeat loops of the course, the watch uses the saved locations to switch between obstacle and running intervals (*Recording an Obstacle Racing Activity*, page 47).

Pack Weight: Sets the weight of the pack you are carrying.

Performance Condition: Enables the performance condition feature during an activity (*Performance Condition*, page 83).

Pool Size: Sets the pool length for pool swimming.

Power Averaging: Controls whether the watch includes zero values for bike power data that occur when you are not pedaling.

Power Mode: Sets the default power mode and low battery power mode for the activity (*Customizing the Power Mode for an Activity*, page 69).

Power Save Timeout: Sets the timeout limit for the watch to stay in activity mode while waiting for you to start the activity, for example, when you are waiting for a race to start. The **Normal** option sets the watch to enter low-power watch mode after 5 minutes of inactivity. The **Extended** option sets the watch to enter low-power watch mode after 25 minutes of inactivity. The extended mode can result in shorter battery life between charges.

Record After Sunset: Sets the watch to record track points after sunset during an expedition.

Record Temperature: Records the ambient temperature around the watch or from a paired temperature sensor.

Record VO2 Max.: Records a VO2 max. estimate for trail run and ultra run activities.

Recording Interval: Sets the frequency for recording track points during an expedition. By default, GPS track points are recorded once an hour, and they are not recorded after sunset. Recording track points less frequently maximizes battery life.

Rename: Sets the activity name.

Rep Counting: Records rep counts during a workout. The **Workouts Only** option records rep counts during guided workouts only.

Repeat: Records repeats for multisport activities. For example, you can use this option for activities that include multiple transitions, such as a swimrun.

Restore Defaults: Resets the activity settings.

Route Stats: Records route statistics for indoor climbing activities.

Routing: Sets the preferences for calculating routes for the activity (*Routing Settings*, page 71).

Running Power: Records running power data and customizes the settings (*Running Power Settings*, page 108).

Runs: Configures the settings for the **Auto Run**, **Lap Key**, and **Lap Alert** options.

Satellites: Sets the GNSS satellite system to use for the activity (*Satellite Settings*, page 72).

Segment Alerts: Notifies you about approaching saved segments (*Segments*, page 72).

Self Evaluation: Sets how often you evaluate your perceived effort for the activity (*Evaluating an Activity*, page 34).

SpeedPro: Records advanced speed metrics for windsurf activity runs.

Stroke Detection: Automatically detects your stroke type for pool swimming.

Touch: Enables the touchscreen during an activity or only for the map screen.

Touch Lock: Enables swiping down from the top of the screen to unlock the touchscreen.

Track Detection: Automatically detects if you are on a track for running.

Transitions: Enables transitions for multisport activities.

Units: Sets the units of measure for the activity.

Vibration Alerts: Notifies you to inhale or exhale during a breathwork activity.

Workout Videos: Plays instructive workout animations for a strength, cardio, yoga, or Pilates activity. Animations are available for pre-installed workouts and workouts downloaded from your Garmin Connect account.

Customizing the Power Mode for an Activity

You can customize the enabled features and estimated battery life for an activity. The watch displays the estimated hours of battery life available for each power mode.

1. From the watch face, press ◯.
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
3. Press ◯.

4 Select the activity settings.
5 Select **Power Mode**.
6 Select an option:
   - To change the default power mode for the activity, select **Default Mode**, and select an option.
   - To change when the low battery alert appears for the activity, select **Low Battery Alert**.
   - To change when the power mode automatically changes when the battery is low, select **Auto Enable Time**.
   - To automatically change the power mode when the low battery alert appears, select **Auto Enable Mode**.

Activity Alerts

You can set alerts for each activity, which can help you to train toward specific goals, to increase your awareness of your environment, and to navigate to your destination. Some alerts are available only for specific activities. There are three types of alerts: event alerts, range alerts, and recurring alerts.

Event alert: An event alert notifies you one time. The event is a specific value. For example, you can set the watch to alert you when you burn a specified number of calories.

Range alert: A range alert notifies you each time the watch is above or below a specified range of values. For example, you can set the watch to alert you when your heart rate is below 60 beats per minute (bpm) and over 210 bpm.

Recurring alert: A recurring alert notifies you each time the watch records a specified value or interval. For example, you can set the watch to alert you every 30 minutes.

Alert Name	Alert Type	Description
Cadence	Range	You can set minimum and maximum cadence values.
Calories	Event, recurring	You can set the number of calories.
Custom	Event, recurring	You can select an existing message or create a custom message and select an alert type.
Distance	Event, recurring	You can set a distance interval.
Elevation	Range	You can set minimum and maximum elevation values.
Heart Rate	Range	You can set minimum and maximum heart rate values or select zone changes. See *About Heart Rate Zones*, page 143 and *Heart Rate Zone Calculations*, page 144.
Pace	Range	You can set minimum and maximum pace values.
Pacing	Recurring	You can set a target swim pace.
Power	Range	You can set the high or low power level.
Proximity	Event	You can set a radius from a saved location.
Run/Walk	Recurring	You can set timed walking breaks at regular intervals.
Running Power	Event, range	You can set minimum and maximum power zone values.
Speed	Range	You can set minimum and maximum speed values.
Stroke Rate	Range	You can set high or low strokes per minute.
Time	Event, recurring	You can set a time interval.
Track Timer	Recurring	You can set a track time interval in seconds.

Setting an Alert

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**, and select an activity.
   NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.
3 Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4 Select **Alerts**.
5 Select an option:
   - Select **Add New** to add a new alert for the activity.
   - Select the alert name to edit an existing alert.
6 If necessary, select the type of alert.
7 Select a zone, enter the minimum and maximum values, or enter a custom value for the alert.
8 If necessary, turn on the alert.

For event and recurring alerts, a message appears each time you reach the alert value. For range alerts, a message appears each time you exceed or drop below the specified range (minimum and maximum values).

Playing Voice Alerts During an Activity

Your watch can play motivational status announcements during a run or other activity. During a voice alert, the watch or phone lowers the volume of the primary audio to play the announcement.

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

1. From the watch face, hold •.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Focus Modes** > **Activity** > **Voice Alerts**.
3. Select an option:
   - To set voice alerts to play through the watch speaker, select **Audio Output** > **Watch**.
   - To set voice alerts to play through your phone or connected Bluetooth® headphones, if available, select **Audio Output** > **Connected Devices**.
   - To hear turn-by-turn alerts during navigation, select **Guidance Alerts**.
   - To hear an alert for each lap, select **Lap Alert**.
   - To customize alerts with your pace and speed information, select **Pace/Speed Alert**.
   - To customize alerts with your heart rate information, select **Heart Rate Alert**.
   - To customize alerts with power data, select **Power Alert**.
   - To hear alerts when you start and stop the activity timer, including the Auto Pause® feature, select **Timer Events**.
   - To hear workout alerts play as a voice alert, select **Workout Alerts**.
   - To hear activity alerts play as a voice alert, select **Activity Alerts** (*Activity Alerts*, page 70).
   - To hear cycling safety alerts from connected Varia™ radar and bike light sensors play as a voice alert, select **Cycling Safety Alerts** (*Wireless Sensors*, page 106).

Routing Settings

You can change the routing settings to customize the way the watch calculates routes for each activity.

NOTE: Not all settings are available for all activity types.

From the watch face, press , select **Activities**, select an activity, press , select the activity settings, and select **Routing**.

Popularity Routing: Calculates routes based on the most popular runs and rides from Garmin Connect™.

Courses: Sets how you navigate courses using the watch. Use the Follow Course option to navigate a course exactly as it appears, without recalculating. Use the Use Map option to navigate a course using routable maps, and recalculate the route if you stray from the course.

Calculation Method: Sets the calculation method to minimize the time, distance, or ascent in routes.

Avoidances: Sets the road or transportation types to avoid in routes.

Type: Sets the behavior of the pointer that appears during direct routing.

Using ClimbPro

The ClimbPro feature helps you manage your effort for the upcoming climbs on a course. You can view climb details, including gradient, distance, and elevation gain, before or in real time while following a course. Cycling climb categories, based on length and gradient, are indicated by color.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.

   NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.
3. Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4. Select **ClimbPro** > **Status** > **When Navigating**.
5. Select an option:
   - Select **Data Field** to customize the data field that appears on the ClimbPro screen.
   - Select **Alert** to set alerts at the start of a climb or at a certain distance from the climb.
   - Select **Descents** to turn descents on or off for running activities.
   - Select **Climb Detection** to choose the types of climbs detected during cycling activities.
6. Review the climbs and course details for the course (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).
7. Start following a saved course (*Navigating to a Destination*, page 133).

Enabling Auto Climb

You can use the auto climb feature to detect elevation changes automatically. You can use it during activities such as hiking, running, or biking.

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities**, and select an activity.

   NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.
3. Scroll down, and select the activity settings.
4. Select **Auto Climb** > **Status**.
5. Select **Always** or **When Not Navigating**.
6. Select an option:
   - Select **Run Screen** to identify which data screen appears while running.
   - Select **Climb Screen** to identify which data screen appears while climbing.
   - Select **Vertical Speed** to set the rate of ascent over time.
   - Select **Mode Switch** to set how quickly the device changes modes.

   NOTE: The Current Screen option allows you to automatically switch to the last screen you were viewing before the auto climb transition occurred.

Satellite Settings

You can change the GNSS satellite settings to customize the satellite systems used for each activity. For more information about GNSS satellite systems, go to garmin.com/aboutGPS.

From the watch face, press ⌚, select **Activities**, select an activity, scroll down and select the activity settings, and select **Satellites**.

NOTE: This feature is not available for all activities.

Off: Disables GNSS satellite systems for the activity.

Use Default: Enables the watch to use the default activity focus mode setting for GNSS satellites (*Customizing a Default Focus Mode*, page 123).

GPS Only: Enables the GPS satellite system.

All Systems: Enables multiple GNSS satellite systems. Using multiple GNSS satellite systems together offers increased performance in challenging environments and faster position acquisition than using GPS only. However, using multiple GNSS systems can reduce battery life more quickly than using GPS only.

All + Multi-Band: Enables multiple GNSS satellite systems on multiple frequency bands. Multi-band GNSS systems use multiple frequency bands and allow for more consistent track logs, improved positioning, improved multi-path errors, and fewer atmospheric errors when using the watch in challenging environments.

Auto Select: Enables the watch to use SatIQ™ technology to dynamically select the best multi-band GNSS system based on your environment. The Auto Select setting offers the best positioning accuracy while still prioritizing battery life.

UltraTrac: Records track points and sensor data less frequently. Enabling the UltraTrac feature increases battery life but decreases the quality of recorded activities. You should use the UltraTrac feature for activities that demand longer battery life and for which frequent sensor data updates are less important.

Segments

You can send running or cycling segments from your Garmin Connect™ account to your device. After a segment is saved to your device, you can race a segment, trying to match or exceed your personal record or other participants who have raced the segment.

NOTE: When you download a course from your Garmin Connect account, you can download all of the available segments in the course.

Strava™ Segments

You can download Strava segments to your D2™ Mach 2 device. Follow Strava segments to compare your performance with your past rides, friends, and pros who have ridden the same segment.

To sign up for a Strava membership, go to the segments menu in your Garmin Connect™ account. For more information, go to www.strava.com.

The information in this manual applies to both Garmin Connect segments and Strava segments.

Racing a Segment

Segments are virtual race courses. You can race a segment, and compare your performance to past activities, others' performance, connections in your Garmin Connect™ account, or other members of the running or cycling communities. You can upload your activity data to your Garmin Connect account to view your segment position.

NOTE: If your Garmin Connect account and Strava™ account are linked, your activity is automatically sent to your Strava account so you can review the segment position.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select an activity.
3. Go for a run or ride.
   When you approach a segment, a message appears, and you can race the segment.
4. Start racing the segment.

A message appears when the segment is complete.

Controls

The controls menu lets you quickly access watch features and options. You can add, reorder, and remove the options in the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).

From any screen, hold .

Icon	Name	Description
	ABC	Select to open the altimeter, barometer, and compass app.
	Airplane Mode	Select to enable airplane mode to turn off all wireless communications.
	Alarm Clock	Select to add or edit an alarm (*Setting an Alarm*, page 94).
	Alt. Time Zones	Select to view the current time of day in additional time zones (*Adding Alternate Time Zones*, page 96).
	Altimeter	Select to open the altimeter screen.
	Applied Ballistics	Select to open the Applied Ballistics app (*Applied Ballistics®*, page 22).
	Assistance	Select to send an assistance request (*Requesting Assistance*, page 139).
	Auto Dive	Select to set the type of dive activity that starts automatically when you begin your descent. You can use the Snooze option to temporarily disable this feature.
	Aviation WX	Select to view the current meteorological aerodrome report (METAR) and terminal aerodrome forecast (TAF) for the nearest airport (*Viewing Aviation Weather Information*, page 91).
	Barometer	Select to open the barometer screen.
	Battery Saver	Select to enable the battery saver feature (*Customizing the Battery Saver Feature*, page 146).
	Brightness	Select to adjust the screen brightness (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
	Broadcast Heart Rate	Select to turn on heart rate broadcasting to a paired device (*Broadcasting Heart Rate Data*, page 126).
	Calculator	Select to use the calculator, including the tip calculator.
	Calendar	Select to view upcoming events from your phone calendar.
	Camera Controls	Select to manually take a photo and record a video clip (*Using the Varia™ Camera Controls*, page 109).
	Clocks	Select to open the Clocks app to set an alarm, timer, stopwatch, or view alternate time zones (*Clocks*, page 94).
	Color Shift	Select to turn the screen to shades of red, green, or orange to use the watch in low light conditions.
	Compass	Select to open the compass screen.

Icon	Name	Description
	Direct-To	Select to navigate directly to an airport or aviation waypoint (*Starting Direct-To Navigation*, page 36).
	Display	Select to turn off the screen for alerts, gestures, and Always On Display mode (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
	Do Not Disturb	Select to enable do not disturb mode to dim the screen and disable alerts and notifications. For example, you can use this mode while watching a movie.
	Find My Phone	Select to play an audible alert on your paired phone, if it is within Bluetooth® range. The Bluetooth signal strength appears on the D2™ watch screen, and it increases as you move closer to your phone. Select to navigate to your lost phone during a GPS activity (*Locating a Phone Lost During a GPS Activity*, page 112).
	Flashlight	Select to turn on the LED flashlight (*Using the LED Flashlight*, page 76).
	Focus Mode	Select to change the current focus mode (*Focus Modes*, page 123).
	Garmin Share	Select to open the Garmin Share app (*Garmin® Share*, page 117).
	History	Select to view your activity history, records, and totals.
	Kill Switch	Select to quickly remove all saved user data and reset all settings to the factory default values (*Clearing User Data with the Kill Switch Feature*, page 77).
	Lock Device	Select to lock the buttons and the touchscreen to prevent inadvertent presses and swipes.
	LTE	On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, select to change the LTE mode (*LTE and Satellite Settings*, page 116).
	Messenger	Select to view and send messages using the Messenger app (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18). On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, you can use the watch's LTE or satellite connection to send messages or check for new messages.
	Messenger Calls	On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch, select to view call history or make a voice call (*Calling from the Messenger Calls App*, page 18).
	Messenger Check-in	On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, select to send a check-in message (*Sending a Check-In Message*, page 115).
	Music	Select to control music playback (*Listening to Music*, page 141).
	Night Vision	Select to adjust the screen for compatibility with night vision goggles and disable the wrist heart rate monitor.
	Notifications	Select to view calls, texts, social network updates, and more, based on your phone notification settings (*Enabling Phone Notifications*, page 111).
	Phone	Select to disable Bluetooth technology and your connection to your paired phone.
	Phone Assistant	Select to connect to your phone's voice assistant (*Using the Phone Assistant*, page 110).
	Power Off	Select to turn off the watch.
	Pulse Oximeter	Select to open the pulse oximeter app (*Pulse Oximeter*, page 126).
	Reference Point	Select to set a reference point for navigation (*Setting a Reference Point*, page 137).
	Save Location	Select to save your current location to navigate back to it later (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).
	Settings	Select to open the settings menu.
	Silent Mode	Select to enable silent mode to disable all sounds.
	SOS	On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, select to initiate an emergency rescue from the Garmin Response℠ center (*SOS for D2™ Mach 2 Pro*, page 116).
	Stealth Mode	Select to enable stealth mode to turn off wireless communications, disable the speaker and microphone, and prevent the storage and sharing of your GPS position.
	Stopwatch	Select to start the stopwatch (*Using the Stopwatch*, page 95).

Icon	Name	Description
	Strobe	Select to turn on the LED flashlight strobe. You can create a custom strobe mode (*Editing the Custom Flashlight Strobe*, page 77).
	Sunrise & Sunset	Select to view sunrise, sunset, and twilight times.
	Sync	Select to sync your watch with your paired phone.
	Time Sync	Select to sync your watch with the time on your phone or using satellites.
	Timer	Select to set a countdown timer (*Using the Countdown Timer*, page 94).
	Touch	Select to disable touchscreen controls.
	Touch Lock	Select to enable swiping down from the top of the screen to unlock the touchscreen.
	Voice Command	Select to open the voice command app and say a command (*Using Voice Commands*, page 16).
	Voice Notes	Select to open the voice notes app and record a note (*Recording a Voice Note*, page 16).
	Volume	Select to open the watch volume controls.
	Wallet	Select to open your Garmin Pay™ wallet and pay for purchases with your watch (*Garmin Pay™*, page 19).
	Water Ejection	Select to play tones to eject water from the speaker and microphone ports.
	Waypoints	Select to view information about the nearest aviation waypoint, including radio frequencies, runway information, weather conditions, and navigation options (*Viewing Aviation Waypoints*, page 21).
	Weather	Select to view the current weather forecast and current conditions. You can view the current meteorological aerodrome reports (METAR) and terminal aerodrome forecasts (TAF) for the nearest airports (*Viewing Aviation Weather Information*, page 91).
	Wi-Fi	Select to disable Wi-Fi® communications.

Customizing the Controls Menu

You can add, remove, and change the order of the shortcut menu options in the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74).

1 Hold to open the controls menu.
2 Hold .
3 Select an option:
   - To add a control to the menu, select **Add Controls**, and select a control to add.
   - To change the location of a shortcut in the controls menu, select **Reorder Controls**, select a control to move, press or to move the control to a new position, and press to select the new location.
   - To remove shortcut from the controls menu, select **Remove Controls**, and select a control to remove.

Using the LED Flashlight

⚠ WARNING

This device may have a flashlight that can be programmed to flash at various intervals. Consult your physician if you have epilepsy or are sensitive to bright or flashing lights.

Using the flashlight reduces battery life. You can decrease the brightness to extend the life of the battery.

1 Hold .
2 Select .
3 If necessary, press to turn on the flashlight.
4 Select an option:
   - To adjust the brightness or color of the flashlight, press or .

     TIP: From any screen, you can quickly press twice to turn on the flashlight. For the first three seconds, you can press or to adjust the brightness or color of the flashlight.

- To program the flashlight to flash in a selected pattern, hold •◯, select **Strobe**, select a mode, and press ◯•.
- To display your assistance contact information and program the flashlight to flash in a distress pattern, hold •◯, select **Distress Pattern**, and press ◯•.

  ⚠ CAUTION

  Programming the flashlight to flash in a distress pattern will not contact your assistance contacts or emergency services on your behalf. Your assistance contact information will only appear if it has been configured in the Garmin Connect™ app.

Editing the Custom Flashlight Strobe

Using the flashlight strobe reduces battery life.

1. Hold •◯.
2. Select ✖ > **Custom**.
3. Press ◯• to turn on the flashlight strobe (optional).
4. Select ✎.
5. Press •◯ or ◯• to scroll to a strobe setting.
6. Press ◯• to scroll through the setting options.

   You can select slow blink to have a lower impact on battery life.
7. Press ◯• to save.

Clearing User Data with the Kill Switch Feature

The Kill Switch feature quickly removes all saved user-entered data and resets all settings to the factory default values.

Hold •◯, and select **Kill Switch**.

TIP: You can press any button to cancel the Kill Switch feature during a 10-second countdown.

After 10 seconds, the watch deletes all user-entered data.

Glances

Your watch comes preloaded with glances that provide quick information (*Viewing Glances*, page 80). Some glances require a Bluetooth® connection to a compatible phone.

Some glances are not visible by default. You can add them to the glances list manually (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81). Some glances appear in a grouping of related metrics, such as health or activity performance.

TIP: You can also download glances from the Connect IQ™ Store (*Connect IQ Features*, page 120).

Name	Description
ABC	Displays combined altimeter, barometer, and compass information.
Alternate time zones	Displays the current time of day in additional time zones (*Adding Alternate Time Zones*, page 96).
Altitude acclimation	At altitudes above 800 m (2625 ft.), displays graphs showing altitude-corrected values for your average pulse oximeter reading, respiration rate, and resting heart rate for the last seven days.
Altimeter	Displays the approximate elevation based on pressure changes.
Barometer	Displays the environmental pressure data based on elevation.
Battery	Displays the estimated battery life and recent battery usage data, including a breakdown of battery use by activity and feature.
Body Battery™	With all-day wear, displays your current Body Battery level and a graph of your level for the last several hours (*Body Battery™*, page 81).
Calendar	Displays upcoming meetings from your phone calendar.
Calories	Displays your calorie information for the current day.
Camera controls	Allows you to manually take a photo and record a video clip when paired with a compatible Varia™ headlight or tail light camera (*Using the Varia™ Camera Controls*, page 109).
Compass	Displays an electronic compass.
Countdowns	Displays upcoming countdown events.
Cycling ability	Displays your rider type, aerobic endurance, aerobic capacity, and anaerobic capacity (*Viewing Cycling Ability*, page 90).
Cycling performance	Displays cycling performance metrics, such as your VO2 max. and FTP estimates (*Performance Measurements*, page 81).
Dog tracking	Displays your dog's location information when you have a compatible dog tracking device paired with your D2™ Mach 2 watch.
Endurance score	Displays a score, graph, and a short message that describes your overall endurance based on all recorded activities (*Endurance Score*, page 90).
Fish forecast	Displays predictions for the best days and times for fishing based on your location, the moon's position, and the moon rise and set times. You can view the rating for the day and major and minor feeding times.
Floors climbed	Tracks your floors climbed and progress toward your goal.
Garmin® coach	Displays scheduled workouts when you select a Garmin coach adaptive training plan in your Garmin Connect™ account. The plan adjusts to your current level of fitness, coaching and schedule preferences, and race date if applicable.
Golf	Displays golf scores and statistics for your last round.
Health Snapshot™	Starts a Health Snapshot session on your watch that records several key health metrics while you hold still for two minutes. It provides a glimpse of your overall cardiovascular status. The watch records metrics such as your average heart rate, stress level, and respiration rate. Displays summaries of your saved Health Snapshot sessions.
Health status	Displays health metrics, such as your respiration and skin temp. **TIP:** You can select each factor to view your history, see your baseline, and gain insight into your data (*Health Status*, page 81).
Heart rate	Displays your current heart rate in beats per minute (bpm) and a graph of your average resting heart rate (RHR).
Hill score	Displays a score, graph, contributing metrics, and a short message that describes your hill climbing performance based on your recorded running activities (*Hill Score*, page 90).

Name	Description
History	Displays your activity history and a graph of your recorded activities (*Using History*, page 98).
HRV status	Displays your seven-day average of your overnight heart rate variability (*Heart Rate Variability Status*, page 83).
Intensity minutes	Tracks your time spent participating in moderate to vigorous activities, your weekly intensity minutes goal, and progress toward your goal.
inReach® controls	Sends messages through your paired inReach device (*Using the inReach® Remote*, page 109).
Jet lag adviser	Displays your internal clock during travel, and provides guidance to help you acclimate to the time zone of your destination (*Using the Jet Lag Adviser*, page 93).
Last activity	Displays a brief summary of your last recorded activity.
Last flight	Displays a brief summary of your last recorded flight.
Last ride Last run Last swim	Displays a brief summary of your last recorded activity and history of the specified sport.
Lifestyle logging	Tracks your day-to-day behaviors, and allows you to see how the behaviors affect certain health metrics in the Garmin Connect app.
Messenger	Displays your Garmin Messenger™ phone app conversations and allows you to reply to messages from your watch (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18). On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, you can use the watch's LTE or communication satellite connection to send messages, send check-in messages, or check for new messages.
Moon phase	Displays the moonrise and moonset times, along with the moon phase, based on your GPS position.
Music	Provides music player controls for your phone or watch music.
Naps	Displays total nap time and Body Battery level gains. You can start the nap timer and set an alarm to wake you up (*Customizing a Default Focus Mode*, page 123).
Notifications	Alerts you to incoming calls, texts, social network updates, and more, based on your phone notification settings (*Enabling Phone Notifications*, page 111).
Nutrition	Displays your daily nutritional overview, including calories and macronutrients. You can also log your food intake. You must have an active Garmin Connect+ subscription to track and view your nutrition (*Garmin Connect+™ Subscription*, page 119).
Personal minimums	Displays custom aviation visibility and weather condition alerts (*Setting Personal Minimum Alerts*, page 20).
PLANESYNC™	Displays avionics data from a connected aircraft in your Garmin Pilot™ account (*Viewing PLANESYNC™ Data*, page 20).
Primary race	Displays the race event you designate as the primary race in your Garmin Connect calendar (*Race Calendar and Primary Race*, page 90).
Pulse oximeter	Allows you to take a manual pulse oximeter reading (*Getting Pulse Oximeter Readings*, page 127). If you are too active for the watch to determine your pulse oximeter reading, the measurements are not recorded.
Race calendar	Displays your upcoming race events set in your Garmin Connect calendar (*Race Calendar and Primary Race*, page 90).
Recovery	Displays your recovery time. The maximum time is four days.
Respiration	Your current respiration rate in breaths per minute and seven-day average. You can do a breathing activity to help you relax.
Running economy	Displays the energy cost of aerobic running. Several key metrics contribute to your running economy estimate (*Running Economy*, page 84).
Running performance	Displays running performance metrics, such as your VO2 max. estimate and lactate threshold (*Performance Measurements*, page 81).
Running tolerance	Tracks your capacity to handle running activities while balancing the risk of injury with performance gains (*Running Tolerance*, page 89).

Name	Description
Scuba diving	Displays your surface interval time, no-fly time remaining, oxygen toxicity units (OTU), central nervous system (CNS) oxygen toxicity percentage, and tissue load, after a dive (*Viewing the Scuba Diving Glance*, page 93).
Sleep coach	Provides recommendations for your sleep need based on sleep and activity history, circadian rhythm, HRV status, and naps. **NOTE:** You can view sleep insights, enable sleep mode, set alarms, and update sleep settings.
Sleep score	Displays total sleep time, a sleep score, and sleep stage information for the previous night. You can also view any overnight breathing variations (*Sleep Tracking*, page 128).
Sports scores	Tracks college or professional sports teams with scores and live data.
Steps	Tracks your daily step count, step goal, and data for previous days.
Stocks	Displays a customizable list of stocks (*Adding a Stock*, page 91).
Stress	Displays your current stress level and a graph of your stress level. You can do a breathing activity to help you relax. If you are too active for the watch to determine your stress level, stress measurements are not recorded.
Sunrise and sunset	Displays sunrise, sunset, dawn, and dusk times, along with a map of the sun's current position and a graph of the day's sunlight.
Temperature	Displays temperature data from the internal temperature sensor.
Tides	Displays information about a tide station, such as the tide height and when the next high and low tides will occur (*Viewing Tide Information*, page 30).
Training readiness	Displays a score and a short message that helps you determine how ready you are for training each day (*Training Readiness*, page 89).
Training status	Displays your current training status and training load, which shows you how your training affects your fitness level and performance (*Training Status*, page 85).
Waypoints	Displays information about the nearest aviation waypoint, including radio frequencies, runway information, weather conditions, and navigation options (*Viewing Aviation Waypoints*, page 21).
Weather	Displays the current temperature and weather forecast. You can view the current weather conditions on the map using several map overlays. You can view the current meteorological aerodrome reports (METAR) and terminal aerodrome forecasts (TAF) for the nearest airports (*Viewing Aviation Weather Information*, page 91).
Weight tracking	Displays your recent weight trends and history. You can enter your weight manually. If you have an Index™ scale paired to your Garmin Connect account, your weight data appears in the glance.

Viewing Glances

Glances provide quick access to health data, activity information, built-in sensors, and more. When you pair your watch, you can view data from your phone, such as health information, weather, and calendar events.

1 From the watch face, press ⌚ to scroll through the glances list.

TIP: You can also swipe to scroll or tap to select options.

2 Press to view more information.
3 Select an option:
   - Press to view details about a glance.
   - Press to view additional options and functions for a glance.

Customizing the Glances List

1 From the watch face, press to view the glances list.
2 Select **Edit**.
3 Select an option:
   - To change the location of a glance in the list, select a glance, press or to move the glance, and press to select the new location.
   - To remove a glance from the list, select a glance, and select .
   - To add a glance to the list, select **Add**, and select one or more glances.
     TIP: You can select **Create Folder** to create a folder that contains multiple glances (*Creating a Glances Folder*, page 81).

Creating a Glances Folder

You can customize the glances list to create folders of related glances.

1 From the watch face, press to view the glances list.
2 Select **Edit** > **Add** > **Create Folder**.
3 Select the glances to include in the folder, and select **Done**.
   NOTE: If the glances are already in the glance list, you can move or copy them into the folder.
4 Select or enter a name for the folder.
5 Select an icon for the folder.
6 If necessary, select an option:
   - To edit the folder, scroll to the folder in the glances list, and hold .
   - To edit the glances in the folder, open the folder and select **Edit** (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81) .

Body Battery™

Your watch analyzes your heart rate variability, stress level, sleep quality, and activity data to determine your overall Body Battery level. Like a gas gauge on a car, it indicates your amount of available reserve energy. The Body Battery level range is from 5 to 100, where 5 to 25 is very low reserve energy, 26 to 50 is low reserve energy, 51 to 75 is medium reserve energy, and 76 to 100 is high reserve energy.

You can sync your watch with your Garmin Connect™ account to view your most up-to-date Body Battery level, long-term trends, and additional details (*Tips for Improved Body Battery™ Data*, page 81).

Tips for Improved Body Battery™ Data

- For more accurate results, wear the watch while sleeping.
- Good sleep charges your Body Battery.
- Strenuous activity and high stress can cause your Body Battery to drain more quickly.
- Food intake, as well as stimulants like caffeine, has no impact on your Body Battery.

Health Status

The Health Status glance provides insight into your health using your sleep data. The metrics include your heart rate, HRV, respiration rate, skin temperature, and sleep pulse oximeter data. After wearing your watch for three weeks, you can select each metric to view your history, baseline, and insights.

TIP: Each metric that appears in blue is within your calculated baseline. Each metric that appears in orange is outside the range of your baseline.

Performance Measurements

These performance measurements are estimates that can help you track and understand your training activities and race performances. The measurements require a few activities using wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor. Cycling performance measurements require a heart rate monitor and a power meter.

These estimates are provided and supported by Garmin Human Performance Lab™. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running.

NOTE: The estimates may seem inaccurate at first. The watch requires you to complete a few activities to learn about your performance.

Functional threshold power (FTP): The watch uses your user profile information from the initial setup to estimate your FTP (*Getting Your FTP Estimate*, page 84).

HRV status: The watch analyzes your wrist heart rate readings while you are sleeping to determine your heart rate variability (HRV) status based on your personal, long-term HRV averages (*Heart Rate Variability Status*, page 83).

Lactate threshold: Lactate threshold is the point where your muscles start to rapidly fatigue. Your watch measures your lactate threshold level using heart rate data and pace (*Lactate Threshold*, page 84).

Predicted race times: The watch uses the VO2 max. estimate and your training history to provide a target race time based on your current state of fitness (*Viewing Your Predicted Race Times*, page 83).

Performance condition: Your performance condition is a real-time assessment after 6 to 20 minutes of activity. It can be added as a data field so you can view your performance condition during the rest of your activity. It compares your real-time condition to your average fitness level (*Performance Condition*, page 83).

Power curve (cycling): The power curve displays your sustained power output over time. You can view your power curve for the previous month, three months, or twelve months (*Viewing Your Power Curve*, page 85).

Running economy: Running economy refers to the energy efficiency of a runner. Several key metrics contribute to your running economy estimate (*Running Economy*, page 84).

Stamina: The watch uses your VO2 max. estimate and heart rate data to provide real-time stamina estimates. It can be added as a data screen so you can view your potential and current stamina during your activity (*Viewing Your Real-Time Stamina*, page 85).

VO2 max.: VO2 max. is the maximum volume of oxygen (in milliliters) you can consume per minute per kilogram of body weight at your maximum performance (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

About VO2 Max. Estimates

VO2 max. is the maximum volume of oxygen (in milliliters) you can consume per minute per kilogram of body weight at your maximum performance. In simple terms, VO2 max. is an indication of athletic performance and should increase as your level of fitness improves. The D2™ Mach 2 device requires wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor to display your VO2 max. estimate. The device has separate VO2 max. estimates for running and cycling. You must run either outside with GPS or ride with a compatible power meter at a moderate level of intensity for several minutes to get an accurate VO2 max. estimate.

On the device, your VO2 max. estimate appears as a number, description, and position on the color gauge. On your Garmin Connect™ account, you can view additional details about your VO2 max. estimate, such as where it ranks for your age and sex.

Purple	Superior
Blue	Excellent
Green	Good
Orange	Fair
Red	Poor

VO2 max. data is provided by Garmin Human Performance Lab™. VO2 max. analysis is provided with permission from The Cooper Institute®. For more information, see the appendix (*VO2 Max. Standard Ratings*, page 164), and go to www.CooperInstitute.org.

Getting Your VO2 Max. Estimate for Running

This feature requires wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor. If you are using a chest heart rate monitor, you must put it on and pair it with your watch (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

For the most accurate estimate, complete the user profile setup (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143), and set your maximum heart rate (*Setting Your Heart Rate Zones*, page 143). The estimate may seem inaccurate at first. The watch requires a few runs to learn about your running performance. You can disable VO2 max. recording for ultra run and trail run activities if you do not want those run types to affect your VO2 max. estimate (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

1. Start a running activity.
2. Run outdoors at a moderate or high intensity, reaching at least 70% of your maximum heart rate.
3. After at least 10 minutes, select **Save**.
4. Press or to scroll through the performance measurements.

Getting Your VO2 Max. Estimate for Cycling

This feature requires a power meter and wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor. The power meter must be paired with your watch (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107). If you are using a chest heart rate monitor, you must put it on and pair it with your watch.

For the most accurate estimate, complete the user profile setup (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143) and set your maximum heart rate (*Setting Your Heart Rate Zones*, page 143). The estimate may seem inaccurate at first. The watch requires a few rides to learn about your cycling performance.

1. Start a cycling activity.
2. Ride at a steady, high intensity for at least 20 minutes.
3. After your ride, select **Save**.
4. Press or to scroll through the performance measurements.

Viewing Your Predicted Race Times

For the most accurate estimate, complete the user profile setup (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143), and set your maximum heart rate (*Setting Your Heart Rate Zones*, page 143).

Your watch uses the VO2 max. estimate and your training history to provide a target race time (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82). The watch analyzes several weeks of your training data to refine the race time estimates.

1. From the watch face, press to view the running performance glance.
2. Press .
3. Scroll to view a predicted race time.
4. Press to view more details.
5. Scroll to view predictions for other distances.

   NOTE: The predictions may seem inaccurate at first. The watch requires a few runs to learn about your running performance.

Heart Rate Variability Status

Your watch analyzes your wrist heart rate readings while you are sleeping to determine your heart rate variability (HRV). Training, physical activity, sleep, nutrition, and healthy habits all impact your heart rate variability. HRV values can vary widely based on gender, age, and fitness level. A balanced HRV status may indicate positive signs of health such as good training and recovery balance, greater cardiovascular fitness, and resilience to stress. An unbalanced or poor status may be a sign of fatigue, greater recovery needs, or increased stress. For best results, you should wear the watch while sleeping. The watch requires three weeks of consistent sleep data to display your heart rate variability status.

Color Zone	Status	Description
Green	Balanced	Your seven-day average HRV is within your baseline range.
Orange	Unbalanced	Your seven-day average HRV is above or below your baseline range.
Red	Low	Your seven-day average HRV is well below your baseline range.
No color	Poor No status	Your HRV values are averaging well below the normal range for your age. No status means that there is insufficient data to generate a seven-day average.

You can sync your watch with your Garmin Connect™ account to view your current heart rate variability status, trends, and educational feedback.

Performance Condition

As you complete your activity, such as running or cycling, the performance condition feature analyzes your pace, heart rate, and heart rate variability to make a real-time assessment of your ability to perform compared to your average fitness level. It is approximately your real-time percentage deviation from your baseline VO2 max. estimate.

Performance condition values range from -20 to +20. After the first 6 to 20 minutes of your activity, the device displays your performance condition score. For example, a score of +5 means that you are rested, fresh, and capable of a good run or ride. You can add performance condition as a data field to one of your training screens to monitor your ability throughout the activity. Performance condition can also be an indicator of fatigue level, especially at the end of a long training run or ride.

NOTE: The device requires a few runs or rides with a heart rate monitor to get an accurate VO2 max. estimate and learn about your running or riding ability (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

Viewing Your Performance Condition

This feature requires wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor.

1 Add **Performance Condition** to a data screen (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).
2 Go for a run or ride.
   After 6 to 20 minutes, your performance condition appears.
3 Scroll to the data screen to view your performance condition throughout the run or ride.

Running Economy

Running economy measures the energy cost of running. While VO2 max. measures the maximum amount of oxygen your body can utilize during intense exercise, running economy reflects how efficiently your body converts that energy into running performance. Running economy is expressed in milliliters of oxygen consumed per kilogram of body weight per kilometer (ml/kg/km). Lower numbers mean that less energy was used.

Requirements: You must record several outdoor run or track run activities using a compatible accessory that measures step speed loss, such as the HRM 600.

Key factors: Running economy uses your profile information, run history, heart rate, speed, and running dynamics. Step speed loss is an essential factor, because it captures how much you slow down when your foot hits the ground (*Running Dynamics*, page 107). For best results, make sure your height and weight settings are correct (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143).

Understanding the results: Keep in mind that running economy is ultimately all about aerobic performance. Easy runs of at least 30 minutes on a track or over flat terrain offer the maximum opportunity for gaining insight into this metric. Indoor runs and trail runs are not used to estimate or update your running economy. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running, and see the appendix (*Running Economy Ratings*, page 164).

Viewing Your Running Economy

- From the watch face, press ◯ to view the running performance glance.
  NOTE: You may need to add the glance to your glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
- From the Garmin Connect™ app, select ••• > **Performance Stats** > **Running Economy**.
  You can also add running economy to your home screen data.

Getting Your FTP Estimate

Before you can get your functional threshold power (FTP) estimate, you must pair a power meter with your watch (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107), and you must get your VO2 max. estimate (*Getting Your VO2 Max. Estimate for Cycling*, page 83).

The watch uses your user profile information from the initial setup and your VO2 max. estimate to estimate your FTP. The watch will automatically detect your FTP during steady, high intensity activities with a power meter. For best results, you should also use a heart rate monitor.

1 From the watch face, scroll down to view the performance glance.
2 Select the glance to view your performance data.
3 Scroll to view your FTP estimate.
   Your FTP estimate appears as a value measured in watts per kilogram, your power output in watts, and a position on the color gauge.

Purple	Superior
Blue	Excellent
Green	Good
Orange	Fair
Red	Untrained

   For more information, see the appendix (*FTP Ratings*, page 164).

Lactate Threshold

Lactate threshold is the exercise intensity at which lactate (lactic acid) starts to accumulate in the bloodstream. In running, this intensity level is estimated in terms of pace, heart rate, or power. When a runner exceeds the threshold, fatigue starts to increase at an accelerating rate. For experienced runners, the threshold occurs at approximately 90% of their maximum heart rate and between 10 km and half-marathon race pace. For average

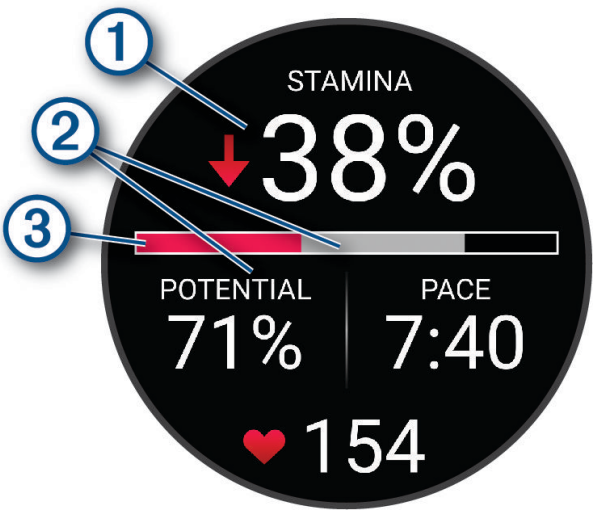
runners, the lactate threshold often occurs well below 90% of maximum heart rate. Knowing your lactate threshold can help you determine how hard to train or when to push yourself during a race.

If you already know your lactate threshold heart rate value, you can enter it in your user profile settings (*Setting Your Heart Rate Zones*, page 143). You can turn on the **Auto Detection** feature to automatically record your lactate threshold during an activity.

Viewing Your Real-Time Stamina

Your watch can provide real-time stamina estimates based on your heart rate data and VO2 max. estimate (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

1. From the watch face, press ⌚.
2. Select **Activities**.
3. Select a run or bike activity.
4. Press ⌚.
5. Select the activity settings.
6. Select **Data Screens** > **Add New** > **Stamina**.
   NOTE: You can change the order of the data screens and edit the primary stamina data field (optional).
7. Start your activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32).
8. Scroll to the data screen.



1	Primary stamina data field. Shows your current stamina percentage, distance remaining, or time remaining.
2	Potential stamina.
3	Current stamina. • Red: Stamina is depleting. • Orange: Stamina is steady. • Green: Stamina is recharging.

Viewing Your Power Curve

Before you can view your power curve, you must record a ride that's at least one hour long using a power meter in the last 90 days (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

You can create workouts in your Garmin Connect™ account. The power curve displays your sustained power output over time. You can view your power curve for the previous month, three months, or twelve months.

1. From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2. Select **Performance Stats** > **Power Curve**.

Training Status

These measurements are estimates that can help you track and understand your training activities. The measurements require you to complete activities for two weeks using wrist-based heart rate or a compatible

chest heart rate monitor. Cycling performance measurements require a heart rate monitor and a power meter. The measurements may seem inaccurate at first when the watch is still learning about your performance.

These estimates are provided and supported by Garmin Human Performance Lab™. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running.

Training status: Training status shows you how your training affects your fitness and performance. Your training status is based on changes to your VO2 max., acute load, and HRV status over an extended time period.

VO2 max.: VO2 max. is the maximum volume of oxygen (in milliliters) you can consume per minute per kilogram of body weight at your maximum performance (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82). Your watch displays heat and altitude corrected VO2 max. values when you are acclimating to high heat environments or high altitude (*Heat and Altitude Performance Acclimation*, page 88).

HRV: HRV is your heart rate variability status over the last seven days (*Heart Rate Variability Status*, page 83).

Acute load: Acute load is a weighted sum of your recent exercise load scores including exercise duration and intensity. (*Acute Load*, page 87).

Training load focus: Your watch analyzes and distributes your training load into different categories based on the intensity and structure of each activity recorded. Training load focus includes the total load accumulated per category, and the focus of the training. Your watch displays your load distribution over the last 4 weeks (*Training Load Focus*, page 87).

Recovery time: The recovery time displays how much time remains before you are fully recovered and ready for the next hard workout (*Recovery Time*, page 88).

Training Status Levels

Training status shows you how your training affects your fitness level and performance. Your training status is based on changes to your VO2 max., acute load, and HRV status over an extended time period. You can use your training status to help plan future training and continue improving your fitness level.

No Status: The watch needs you to record multiple activities over two weeks, with VO2 max. results from running or cycling, to determine your training status.

Detraining: You have a break in your training routine or you are training much less than usual for a week or more. Detraining means that you are unable to maintain your fitness level. You can try increasing your training load to see improvement.

Recovery: Your lighter training load is allowing your body to recover, which is essential during extended periods of hard training. You can return to a higher training load when you feel ready.

Maintaining: Your current training load is enough to maintain your fitness level. To see improvement, try adding more variety to your workouts or increasing your training volume.

Productive: Your current training load is moving your fitness level and performance in the right direction. You should plan recovery periods into your training to maintain your fitness level.

Peaking: You are in ideal race condition. Your recently reduced training load is allowing your body to recover and fully compensate for earlier training. You should plan ahead, since this peak state can only be maintained for a short time.

Overreaching: Your training load is very high and counterproductive. Your body needs a rest. You should give yourself time to recover by adding lighter training to your schedule.

Unproductive: Your training load is at a good level, but your fitness is decreasing. Try focusing on rest, nutrition, and stress management.

Strained: There is imbalance between your recovery and training load. It is a normal result after a hard training or major event. Your body may be struggling to recover, so you should pay attention to your overall health.

Tips for Getting Your Training Status

The training status feature depends on updated assessments of your fitness level, including at least one VO2 max. measurement per week (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82). Indoor run activities do not generate a VO2 max. estimate in order to preserve the accuracy of your fitness level trend. You can disable VO2 max. recording for ultra run and trail run activities if you do not want those run types to affect your VO2 max. estimate (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

To get the most out of the training status feature, you can try these tips.

- At least one time per week, run or ride outdoors with a power meter, and reach a heart rate higher than 70% of your maximum heart rate for at least 10 minutes.

  After using the watch for one or two weeks, your training status should be available.
- Record all of your fitness activities on your primary training device, allowing your watch to learn about your performance (*Syncing Activities and Performance Measurements*, page 119).

- Wear the watch consistently while you sleep, to continue generating an up-to-date HRV status. Having a valid HRV status can help maintain a valid training status when you do not have as many activities with VO2 max. measurements.

Acute Load

Acute load is a weighted sum of your excess post-exercise oxygen consumption (EPOC) for the last several days. The gauge indicates whether your current load is low, optimal, high, or very high. The optimal range is based on your individual fitness level and training history. The range adjusts as your training time and intensity increase or decrease.

Training Load Focus

In order to maximize performance and fitness gains, training should be distributed across three categories: low aerobic, high aerobic, and anaerobic. Training load focus shows you how much of your training is currently in each category and provides training targets. Training load focus requires at least 7 days of training to determine if your training load is low, optimal, or high. After 4 weeks of training history, your training load estimate will have more detailed target information to help you balance your training activities.

Below targets: Your 4-week training load is lower than optimal in all intensity categories.

Low aerobic shortage: Try adding more low aerobic activities to provide recovery and balance for your higher intensity activities.

High aerobic shortage: Try adding more high aerobic activities to help improve your lactate threshold and VO2 max. over time.

Anaerobic shortage: Try adding a few more intense, anaerobic activities to improve your speed and anaerobic capacity over time.

Balanced: Your training load is balanced and provides all-around fitness benefits as you continue training.

Low aerobic focus: Your training load is mostly low aerobic activity. This provides a solid foundation and prepares you for adding more intense workouts.

High aerobic focus: Your training load is mostly high aerobic activity. These activities help to improve lactate threshold, VO2 max., and endurance.

Anaerobic focus: Your training load is mostly intense activity. This leads to rapid fitness gains, but should be balanced with low aerobic activities.

Above targets: Your 4-week training load is higher than optimal.

Load Ratio

Load ratio is the ratio of your acute (short-term) training load to your chronic (long-term) training load. It's helpful for tracking your training load changes.

Status	Value	Description
No Status	None	Load ratio will be visible after 2 weeks of training.
Low	Lower than 0.8	Your short-term training load is lower than your long-term training load.
Optimal	0.8 to 1.4	The short-term and long-term training loads are balanced. The optimal range is based on your individual fitness level and training history.
High	1.5 to 1.9	Your short-term training load is higher than your long-term training load.
Very High	2.0 or higher	Your short-term training load is significantly higher than your long-term training load.

About Training Effect

Training Effect measures the impact of an activity on your aerobic and anaerobic fitness. Training Effect accumulates during the activity. As the activity progresses, the Training Effect value increases. Training Effect is determined by your user profile information and training history, and heart rate, duration, and intensity of your activity. There are seven different Training Effect labels to describe the primary benefit of your activity. Each label is color coded and corresponds to your training load focus (*Training Load Focus*, page 87). Each feedback phrase, for example, "Highly Impacting VO2 Max." has a corresponding description in your Garmin Connect™ activity details.

Aerobic Training Effect uses your heart rate to measure how the accumulated intensity of an exercise affects your aerobic fitness and indicates if the workout had a maintaining or improving effect on your fitness level. Your excess post-exercise oxygen consumption (EPOC) accumulated during exercise is mapped to a range of values that account for your fitness level and training habits. Steady workouts at moderate effort or workouts involving longer intervals (>180 seconds) have a positive impact on your aerobic metabolism and result in an improved aerobic Training Effect.

Anaerobic Training Effect uses heart rate and speed (or power) to determine how a workout affects your ability to perform at very high intensity. You receive a value based on the anaerobic contribution to EPOC and the type of activity. Repeated high-intensity intervals of 10 to 120 seconds have a highly beneficial impact on your anaerobic capability and result in an improved anaerobic Training Effect.

You can add Aerobic Training Effect and Anaerobic Training Effect as data fields to one of your training screens to monitor your numbers throughout the activity.

Training Effect	Aerobic Benefit	Anaerobic Benefit
From 0.0 to 0.9	No benefit.	No benefit.
From 1.0 to 1.9	Minor benefit.	Minor benefit.
From 2.0 to 2.9	Maintains your aerobic fitness.	Maintains your anaerobic fitness.
From 3.0 to 3.9	Impacts your aerobic fitness.	Impacts your anaerobic fitness.
From 4.0 to 4.9	Highly impacts your aerobic fitness.	Highly impacts your anaerobic fitness.
5.0	Overreaching and potentially harmful without enough recovery time.	Overreaching and potentially harmful without enough recovery time.

Training Effect technology is provided and supported by Garmin Human Performance Lab™. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data.

Recovery Time

You can use your Garmin® device with wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor to display how much time remains before you are fully recovered and ready for the next hard workout.

The recovery time recommendation uses your VO2 max. estimate and may seem inaccurate at first. The device requires you to complete a few activities to learn about your performance.

The recovery time appears immediately following an activity. The time counts down until it is optimal for you to attempt another hard workout. The device updates your recovery time throughout the day based on changes in sleep, stress, relaxation, and physical activity.

Recovery Heart Rate

If you are training with wrist-based heart rate or a compatible chest heart rate monitor, you can check your recovery heart rate value after each activity. Recovery heart rate is the difference between your exercising heart rate and your heart rate two minutes after the exercise has stopped. For example, after a typical training run, you stop the timer. Your heart rate is 140 bpm. After two minutes of no activity or cool down, your heart rate is 90 bpm. Your recovery heart rate is 50 bpm (140 minus 90). Some studies have linked recovery heart rate to cardiac health. Higher numbers generally indicate healthier hearts.

TIP: For best results, you should stop moving for two minutes while the device calculates your recovery heart rate value.

NOTE: Your recovery heart rate is not calculated for low-impact activities, such as yoga.

Heat and Altitude Performance Acclimation

Environmental factors such as high temperature and altitude impact your training and performance. For example, high altitude training can have a positive impact on your fitness, but you may notice a temporary VO2 max. decline while exposed to high altitudes. Your D2™ Mach 2 watch provides acclimation notifications and corrections to your VO2 max. estimate and training status when the temperature is above 22°C (72°F) and when the altitude is above 800 m (2625 ft.). You can keep track of your heat and altitude acclimation in the training status glance.

NOTE: The heat acclimation feature is available only for GPS activities and requires weather data from your connected phone.

Pausing and Resuming Your Training Status

If you are injured or sick, you can pause your training status. You can continue to record fitness activities, but your training status, training load focus, recovery feedback, and workout recommendations are temporarily disabled.

You can resume your training status when you are ready to start training again. For best results, you need at least one VO2 max. measurement each week (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

1 When you want to pause your training status, select an option:
   - From the training status glance, hold •◯, and select **Options** > **Pause Training Status**.
   - From your Garmin Connect™ settings, select **Performance Stats** > **Training Status** > ⋮ > **Pause Training Status**.

2 Sync your watch with your Garmin Connect account.
3 When you want to resume your training status, select an option:
   - From the training status glance, hold ◉, and select **Options** > **Resume Training Status**.
   - From your Garmin Connect settings, select **Performance Stats** > **Training Status** > ⋮ > **Resume Training Status**.
4 Sync your watch with your Garmin Connect account.

Training Readiness

Your training readiness is a score and a short message that helps you determine how ready you are for training each day. The score is continuously calculated and updated throughout the day using these factors:

- Sleep score (last night)
- Recovery time
- HRV status
- Acute load
- Sleep history (last 3 nights)
- Stress history (last 3 days)
- Dive history (last 24 hours)

  NOTE: Your training readiness score is unavailable for 24 hours after a dive longer than 3 minutes and deeper than 4.6 m (15 ft.).

Color Zone	Score	Description
Purple	95 to 100	Prime Best possible
Blue	75 to 94	High Ready for challenges
Green	50 to 74	Moderate Good to go
Orange	25 to 49	Low Time to slow down
Red	1 to 24	Poor Let your body recover

To view historical training readiness scores, go to your Garmin Connect™ account.

Running Tolerance

Running tolerance is a feature designed to help you build mileage while balancing the risk of injury with performance gains. The running tolerance glance on your watch displays your acute impact load for today, a mileage estimate for the current training week, and a chart of your running tolerance and impact load trends over several weeks.

Impact load (mile or kilometer): Your impact mile (equivalent) is the amount of mechanical load on the body generated by running 1 mile on even ground, at an easy pace (baseline). Impact load is estimated using factors such as running intensity, whether you're running uphill or downhill, and running dynamics data. For example, if you run 5 hard miles with hills, your impact load could be 8, meaning that the actual strain was equivalent to running 8 baseline miles. Similarly, if you run 3 slow and easy miles, it could have an impact load of 2.5.

Acute impact load: Acute impact load is a helpful indicator in the capacity you have to run that day, in the context of your weekly running tolerance. The impact load of each new run you record is added directly to your acute impact load, and the influence of that load diminishes gradually as time passes.

Weekly impact load: This value represents the unweighted sum impact of your runs for each training week. You can set the training week in your Garmin Connect™ settings. For the current training week, it displays how your "bucket" is filling throughout the week. It also provides the basis for the weekly historical view of impact load and running tolerance.

Tolerance: Tolerance reflects the maximum acute load your body can manage based on your running history. It is personalized, and it is adjusted at the beginning of each training week according to a science-based interpretation of your recent and long-term running history. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running.

Understanding the results: Hard, fast running produces higher ground reaction forces and puts more wear and tear on your body than easy jogging. Walking segments during a run produce only half the impact of normal running. You can review a chart of the actual mileage plotted next to the impact load in your run activity history. A healthy approach to running will always involve listening to your body and using data together.

Endurance Score

Your endurance score helps you understand your overall endurance based on all recorded activities with heart rate data. You can view recommendations for improving your endurance score, and the top sports contributing to your score over time.

Color Zone	Description
Pink	Elite
Purple	Superior
Blue	Expert
Green	Well Trained
Yellow	Trained
Orange	Intermediate
Red	Recreational

For more information, see the appendix (*Endurance Score Ratings*, page 165).

Hill Score

Your hill score helps you understand your current capacity for uphill running based on your training history and a VO2 max. estimate from the last two months. Your watch detects uphill segments with 2% grade or more during an outdoor running, walking, or hiking activity. You can view your hill endurance, hill strength, and changes to your hill score over time.

Color Zone	Score	Description
Pink	95 to 100	Elite
Purple	85 to 94	Expert
Blue	70 to 84	Skilled
Green	50 to 69	Trained
Orange	25 to 49	Challenger
Red	1 to 24	Recreational

Viewing Cycling Ability

Before you can view your cycling ability, you must have a 7-day training history, VO2 max. data recorded in your user profile (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82), and power curve data from a paired power meter (*Viewing Your Power Curve*, page 85).

Cycling ability is a measurement of your performance across three categories: aerobic endurance, aerobic capacity, and anaerobic capacity. Cycling ability includes your current rider type, such as climber. Information you enter in your user profile, such as body weight, also helps determine your rider type (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143).

1. From the watch face, press to view the cycling ability glance.
   NOTE: You may need to add the glance to your glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2. Press to view your current rider type.
3. Press to view a detailed analysis of your cycling ability (optional).

Race Calendar and Primary Race

When you add a race event to your Garmin Connect™ calendar, you can view the event on your watch by adding the primary race glance (*Glances*, page 78). The event date must be in the next 365 days. The watch displays a countdown to the event, your goal time or predicted finish time (running events only), and weather information.

NOTE: Historical weather information for the location and date is available right away. Local forecast data appears approximately 14 days before the event.

If you add more than one race event, you are prompted to choose a primary event.

Depending on the available course data for your event, you can view elevation data, the course map, and add a PacePro™ plan (*PacePro™ Training*, page 47).

Training for a Race Event

Your watch can suggest daily workouts to help you train for a running or cycling event, if you have a VO2 max. estimate (*About VO2 Max. Estimates*, page 82).

1 From the Garmin Connect™ app, select •••.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Races & Events** > **Find an Event**.
3 Search for an event in your area.
   You can also select **Create an Event** to create your own event.
4 Select **Add to Calendar**.
5 Sync your watch with your Garmin Connect account.
6 On your watch, scroll to the primary race glance to see a countdown to your primary race event.
7 From the watch face, press ⌚, and select a running or cycling activity.
   NOTE: If you have completed at least one outdoor run with heart rate data or one ride with heart rate and power data, daily suggested workouts appear on your watch.

Adding a Stock

Before you can customize the stocks list, you must add the stocks glance to the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).

1 From the watch face, press ⌚ to view the stocks glance.
2 Press ⌚.
3 Select **Edit** > **Add**.
4 Enter the company name or stock symbol for the stock you want to add, and select ✔.
   The watch displays search results.
5 Select the stock you want to add.
6 Select the stock to view more information.
   TIP: To display the stock on the glances list, you can press ⌚, and select **Set as Favorite**.

Adding Weather Locations

1 From the watch face, scroll to view the weather glance.
2 On the first glance screen, press ⌚.
3 Select **Add Location**, and search for a location.
4 If necessary, repeat steps 2 and 3 to add more locations.

Viewing Aviation Weather Information

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

⚠ WARNING

This feature allows users to view weather data and set alerts for information that is provided and maintained by third parties. Garmin® makes no representations about the accuracy, reliability, completeness, or timeliness of weather data provided by third parties. It is your responsibility to review weather reports and conditions, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment, especially during times of potential severe weather.

1 From the watch face, press ⌚ to view the weather glance.
   NOTE: You may need to add the glance to your glance list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select the glance to view the current weather for your location.

3 If necessary, press ⌚ to set your location, view weather alerts, or update weather options.
4 Scroll down to view meteorological aerodrome report (METAR) information and terminal aerodrome forecasts (TAF).
5 Tap the METAR or TAF report to view more details.

6 If necessary, press ⌚ to enable METAR, special weather report (SPECI), or TAF alerts.

Lifestyle Logging

Use the lifestyle logging glance on your D2™ Mach 2 watch to discover how everyday behaviors affect several health metrics, such as your sleep score, resting heart rate, and more. You can log and track behaviors that reflect your daily habits and actions, such as late caffeine intake, cold plunges, or reading before bedtime, on the Garmin Connect™ app (*Tracking Lifestyle Logging Behaviors*, page 92). You can even create and track custom behaviors.

Tracking Lifestyle Logging Behaviors

Before you can use the lifestyle logging feature, you must have a Garmin Connect™ account, download the Garmin Connect app, and pair your Garmin® watch with the Garmin Connect app.

1 From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2 Select **Health Stats** > **Lifestyle Logging**.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions.
4 Set up logging reminders (optional).

You can view detailed lifestyle logging reports on the Garmin Connect app.

TIP: You can enable the lifestyle logging glance on your watch to view and log lifestyle behaviors (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).

Using the Jet Lag Adviser

Before you can use the Jet Lag Adviser glance, you must plan a trip in the Garmin Connect™ app (*Planning a Trip in the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 93).

You can use the Jet Lag Adviser glance while traveling to see how your internal clock compares to the local time, and to receive guidance on how to reduce the effects of jet lag.

1 From the watch face, press to view the **Jet Lag Adviser** glance.
2 Press to see how your internal clock compares to the local time, and the overall level of your jet lag.
3 Select an option:
   - To see an informational message about your current jet lag level, press .
   - To see a timeline for recommended actions to help reduce symptoms of jet lag, press .

Planning a Trip in the Garmin Connect™ App

1 From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Jet Lag Adviser** > **Add Trip Details**.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Viewing the Scuba Diving Glance

You can use the scuba diving glance to monitor your body's recovery after a dive. After a dive, you may need to wait several hours before it is safe to fly on an airplane.

1 From the watch face, press to view the scuba diving glance.
2 Press to view your surface interval (SI) time, no-fly time remaining, and the time of day the no-fly period ends.
3 Press to view your tissue load details, current oxygen toxicity units (OTU), and central nervous system (CNS) percentage.

   NOTE: The OTU accumulated during a dive expire after 24 hours. For more information about the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA®) OTU guidelines and calculations, see garmin.com/dive/cns-otu.

OTU	Green: Under the NOAA recreational limit. Yellow: NOAA recreational limit. Red: NOAA military limit.
CNS	Green: 0 to 79% CNS oxygen toxicity. Yellow: 80 to 99% CNS oxygen toxicity. Red: 100% or greater CNS oxygen toxicity.

4 Press to view the dive log of your recently recorded dives.

Clocks

Setting an Alarm

You can set multiple alarms.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .
2 Select **Clocks** > **Alarms**.
3 Select an option:
   - To set and save an alarm for the first time, enter the alarm time.
   - To set and save additional alarms, select **Add Alarm**, and enter the alarm time.
4 Scroll down for more options.
5 Select **Save**.

Editing an Alarm

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .
2 Select **Clocks** > **Alarms**.
3 Select an alarm.
4 Select an option:
   - To turn the alarm on or off, select **Status**.
   - To change the alarm time, select **Time**.
   - To set an alarm to gently wake you in the 30-minute window before your scheduled alarm based on optimal sleep timing, select **Smart Wake**.

     NOTE: Your alarm will always go off at your selected time in addition to any earlier alarms. For example, if you set your alarm for 8:00 am, the alarm may gently alert you to wake up some time between 7:30 and 8:00 am.
   - To set the alarm to repeat regularly, select **Repeat**, and select when the alarm should repeat.
   - To select the type of alarm notification, select **Sound & Vibe**.

     NOTE: You can also preview the alarm sound, adjust the volume, and select vibration options. You can select **Quiet Start** if you want your alarm to start quietly and then get louder.
   - To change the time zone for the alarm, select **Time Zone**, and select a time zone.
   - To select a description for the alarm, select **Label**.
5 Select an option:
   - To save your edits, select **Done**.
   - To delete the alarm, select **Delete**.

Using the Countdown Timer

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .
2 Select **Clocks** > **Timers**.
3 If you have never saved a timer, enter the time using the touchscreen or the and buttons.
4 If you previously saved a timer, select an option:
   - To set a new countdown timer without saving it, select **Quick Timer**, and enter the time.
   - To set and save a new countdown timer, select **Edit** > **Add Timer**, and enter the time.
   - To set a saved countdown timer, select the saved timer.
5 Press to start the timer.

6 If necessary, select an option:
   - To stop the timer, select ⏸.
   - To restart the timer, select ↺.
   - To cancel the timer, select ⋮ > **Cancel Timer**.
   - To save the timer, select ⋮ > **Save Timer**.
   - To automatically restart the timer after it expires, select ⋮ > **Auto Restart** > **On**.
   - To customize the timer notification, select ⋮ > **Sound & Vibe**.

Deleting a Countdown Timer

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold •◯.
   - From the watch face, press ◯•.
   - Hold •◯.
2 Select **Clocks** > **Timers** > **Edit**.
3 Select a timer.
4 Select **Delete**.

Using the Stopwatch

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold •◯.
   - From the watch face, press ◯•.
   - Hold •◯.
2 Select **Clocks** > **Stopwatch**.
3 Press ◯• to start the timer.
4 Press ◯• to restart the lap timer ①.

The total stopwatch time ② continues running.

5 Press ◯• to stop both timers.
6 Select an option:
   - To reset both timers, press •◯.
   - To save the stopwatch time as an activity, press •◯, and select **Save Activity**.
   - To reset the timers and exit the stopwatch, press •◯, and select **Done**.
   - To review the lap timers, press •◯, and select **Review**.
     NOTE: The **Review** option only appears if there have been multiple laps.
   - To return to the watch face without resetting the timers, press •◯, and select **Go to Watchface**.
   - To enable or disable lap recording, press •◯, and select **Lap Key**.

Adding Alternate Time Zones

You can display the current time of day in additional time zones.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .

   TIP: You can also view your alternate time zones in the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select **Clocks** > **Alt. Time Zones** > **Add**.
3 Press or to highlight a region, and press to select it.
4 Select a time zone.

Editing an Alternate Time Zone

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .

   TIP: You can also view your alternate time zones in the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select **Clocks** > **Alt. Time Zones**.
3 Select a time zone.
4 Press .
5 Select an option:
   - To set the time zone to display on the glances list, select **Set as Favorite**.
   - To enter a custom name for the time zone, select **Rename**.
   - To enter a custom abbreviation for the time zone, select **Abbreviate**.
   - To change the time zone, select **Change Zone**.
   - To delete the time zone, select **Delete**.

Adding a Countdown Event

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .

   TIP: You can also view your countdown events in the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select **Clocks** > **Countdowns** > **Add**.
3 Enter a name.
4 Select a year, month, and day.
5 Select an option:
   - Select **All Day**.
   - Select **Specific Time**, and enter a time.
6 Select an icon.

Editing a Countdown Event

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold .
   - From the watch face, press .
   - Hold .

   TIP: You can also view your countdown events in the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2 Select **Clocks** > **Countdowns**.
3 Select a countdown event.
4 Press , and select **Set as Favorite** to show the countdown event in the glances list (optional).

5 Press ⌚, and select **Edit Countdown**.
6 Select an option to edit:
- To rename the event, select **Name**.
- To change the date, select **Date**.
- To change the time, select **Time**.
- To change the icon, select **Icon**.
- To add an abbreviated name for the event, select **Abbreviation**.
- To add an event location, select **Location**.
- To add event reminders, select **Reminders**.
- To repeat the event every year, select **Repeat Annually**.
- To remove the event, select **Delete Countdown**.

History

History includes time, distance, calories, average pace or speed, lap data, and optional sensor information.

NOTE: When the device memory is full, your oldest data is overwritten.

Using History

History contains saved activity data, records, and totals.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold •.
   - From the watch face, press •.
   - From the watch face, press •.
2 Select **History**.
   A bar graph of your recent activities appears.
3 Press • to view options.
4 Select an option:
   - To change the time period for the bar graph, select **Graph Options**.
   - To view your personal records by sport, select **Records** (*Personal Records*, page 98).
   - To view your weekly or monthly totals, select **Totals** (*Viewing Data Totals*, page 99).
5 Press • to return to the bar graph.
6 Scroll down to view your activity history.
7 Select an activity.
8 Press • to view options.

Multisport History

Your device stores the overall multisport summary of the activity, including overall distance, time, calories, and optional accessory data. Your device also separates the activity data for each sport segment and transition so you can compare similar training activities and track how quickly you move through the transitions. Transition history includes distance, time, average speed, and calories.

Personal Records

When you complete an activity, the watch displays any new personal records you achieved during that activity. Personal records include your fastest time over several typical race distances, highest strength activity weight for major movements, and longest run, ride, or swim.

NOTE: For cycling, personal records also include most ascent and best power (power meter required).

Viewing Your Personal Records

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold •.
   - From the watch face, press •.
   - From the watch face, press •.
2 Select **History**.
3 Press • to view options.
4 Select **Records**.
5 Select a sport.
6 Select a record.
7 Select **View Record**.

Restoring a Personal Record

You can set each personal record back to the one previously recorded.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, hold •.
   - From the watch face, press •.
   - From the watch face, press •.

2 Select **History**.
3 Press to view options.
4 Select **Records**.
5 Select a sport.
6 Select a record to restore.
7 Select **Previous** > ✔.
NOTE: This does not delete any saved activities.

Clearing Personal Records

1 Select an option:
- From the watch face, hold .
- From the watch face, press .
- From the watch face, press .

2 Select **History**.
3 Press to view options.
4 Select **Records**.
5 Select a sport.
6 Select an option:
- To delete one record, select a record, and select **Clear Record** > ✔.
- To delete all records for the sport, select **Clear All Records** > ✔.

NOTE: This does not delete any saved activities.

Viewing Data Totals

You can view the accumulated distance and time data saved to your watch.

1 Select an option:
- From the watch face, hold .
- From the watch face, press .
- From the watch face, press .

2 Select **History**.
3 Press to view options.
4 Select **Totals**.
5 Select an activity.
6 Select an option to view weekly or monthly totals.

Aviation Settings

⚠ WARNING

This watch is not intended to provide primary flight information and is to be used for supplemental purposes only.

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Aviation Settings**.

Units: Sets the units of measure used for aviation data.

Weather Options: Customizes how the weather information appears in the glances and manages weather data downloads (*Aviation Weather Settings*, page 100).

Favorite Airports: Sets your favorite airports (*Adding Favorite Airports*, page 100).

Airport Filter: Sets the airport options that appear when searching for airports. For example, you can set the minimum runway length and surface material, and indicate whether private airports and heliports are displayed in search results.

Map Settings: Sets the ownship aircraft type, and enables METAR and airspace information on the map.

Aviation Weather Settings

⚠ WARNING

This feature allows users to view weather data and set alerts for information that is provided and maintained by third parties. Garmin® makes no representations about the accuracy, reliability, completeness, or timeliness of weather data provided by third parties. It is your responsibility to review weather reports and conditions, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment, especially during times of potential severe weather.

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Aviation Settings** > **Weather Options**.

Update Current Location: Updates weather data for your current GPS location.

Units: Sets the units of measure for temperature, visibility, and wind speed.

Flt. Conditions: Sets the flight condition colors to a standard or classic color scheme.

Adding Favorite Airports

You can add your favorite airports so you can quickly select them in the menu. For example, you can quickly choose a favorite airport for direct-to navigation.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Aviation Settings** > **Favorite Airports** > **Add**.
3. Select an option:
   - To search for an airport near you, select **Nearest Airports**, and wait while the watch locates satellites.
   - To search for an airport by its identifier, select **Search by Ident.**, and enter all or part of the alphanumeric identifier.

   A list of airports appears.
4. Select an airport.
5. Select **Add** to add another favorite airport (optional).

Notifications and Alerts Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts**.

Smart Notifications: Customizes the smart notifications that appear on your watch (*Enabling Phone Notifications*, page 111).

Health & Wellness: Customizes the health and wellness alerts that appear on your watch (*Health and Wellness Alerts*, page 101).

Report Settings: Enables reports, and customizes the report data and theme. You can select **Morning Report** to create and edit daily messages in the morning report (*Customizing Your Morning Report*, page 102). You can select **Evening Report** to set the schedule for the evening report (*Customizing Your Evening Report*, page 102). You can select **Choose Theme** to customize the background theme for your reports.

Messenger: Sets the sound and vibration options for Messenger calls and texts.

NOTE: This setting is for only available for the D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch.

System Alerts: Sets time (*Setting Time Alerts*, page 102), barometer (*Setting a Storm Alert*, page 102), or phone connection alerts (*Turning On Phone Connection Alerts*, page 103).

Notification Center: Enables the notification center for viewing new notifications (*Viewing Notifications*, page 111).

Health and Wellness Alerts

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **Health & Wellness**.

Daily Summary: A Body Battery™ daily summary appears a few hours before the start of your sleep window. The daily summary provides insight on how your daily stress and activity history impacted your Body Battery level (*Body Battery™*, page 81).

Stress Alerts: Notifies you when periods of stress have drained your Body Battery level.

Rest Alerts: Notifies you after you have a restful period and its impact on your Body Battery level.

Abnormal Heart Rate Alerts: Notifies you when your heart rate exceeds or drops below a target value (*Setting an Abnormal Heart Rate Alert*, page 101).

Jet Lag Adviser: Provides jet lag symptom advice for a trip, such as sleep and exercise recommendations (*Using the Jet Lag Adviser*, page 93).

Move Alert: Reminds you to keep moving (*Move Alert*, page 101) (*Customizing Move Alerts*, page 101).

Goal Alerts: Notifies you when you reach your daily steps goal, daily floors climbed goal, and weekly intensity minutes goal.

Setting an Abnormal Heart Rate Alert

⚠ CAUTION

This feature only alerts you when your heart rate exceeds or drops below a certain number of beats per minute, as selected by the user, after at least ten minutes of inactivity. This feature does not notify you when your heart rate drops below the selected threshold during your chosen sleep window configured in the Garmin Connect™ app. This feature does not notify you of any potential heart condition and is not intended to treat or diagnose any medical condition or disease. Always defer to your health care provider for any heart-related issues.

You can set the heart rate threshold value.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **Health & Wellness** > **Abnormal Heart Rate Alerts**.
3. Select **High Alert** or **Low Alert**.
4. Set the heart rate threshold value.

Each time your heart rate exceeds or drops below the threshold value, a message appears and the watch vibrates.

Move Alert

Sitting for prolonged periods of time can trigger undesirable metabolic state changes. The move alert reminds you to keep moving. After one hour of inactivity, a message appears. The watch also beeps or vibrates if audible tones are turned on (*System Settings*, page 148). You can customize your move alert to be dismissed by walking or other types of movement.

Customizing Move Alerts

1. Hold •◯.

2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **Health & Wellness** > **Move Alert** > **On**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Alert Type** to set the alert based on steps or other types of movement.
   - Select **Movements** to allow sitting moves or free motion moves to clear the alert.
   - Select **Movement Duration** to set the alert to be cleared after 30, 45, or 60 seconds.

Morning Report

Your watch displays a morning report based on your normal wake time. Scroll to view the report, which includes weather, sleep, overnight heart rate variability status, and more (*Customizing Your Morning Report*, page 102).

Customizing Your Morning Report

NOTE: You can customize these settings on your watch or in your Garmin Connect™ account.

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **Report Settings** > **Morning Report**.
3 Select an option:
   - To enable or disable the morning report, select **Show Report**.
   - To customize the order and type of data that appears in your morning report, select **Edit Report**.
   - To write and add custom messages to your morning report, select **Customize Daily Messages** > **Edit Messages**.

Evening Report

Your watch displays an evening report prior to your sleep time. Scroll to view the report, which includes your Body Battery™ details, tomorrow's workout and weather, sleep coach recommendation, and more (*Customizing Your Evening Report*, page 102).

Customizing Your Evening Report

NOTE: You can customize these settings on your watch or in your Garmin Connect™ account.

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **Report Settings** > **Evening Report**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Show Report** to enable or disable the evening report.
   - Select **Edit Report** to customize the order and type of data that appears in your evening report.
   - Select **Sleep Suggestion** to enable or disable the sleep suggestion in your evening report.
   - Select **Schedule Report** to set the amount of time between the report and your sleep start (*Customizing a Default Focus Mode*, page 123).

Setting Time Alerts

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **System Alerts** > **Time**.
3 Select an option:
   - To set an alert to sound a specific number of minutes or hours before the actual sunset occurs, select **Til Sunset** > **Status** > **On**, select **Time**, and enter the time.
   - To set an alert to sound a specific number of minutes or hours before the actual sunrise occurs, select **Til Sunrise** > **Status** > **On**, select **Time**, and enter the time.
   - To set an alert to sound every hour, select **Hourly** > **On**.

Setting a Storm Alert

⚠ WARNING

This alert is an informational feature and is not intended to be the primary source for tracking changes in the weather. It is your responsibility to review weather reports and conditions, to remain aware of your surroundings, and to use safe judgment, especially during times of severe weather. Failure to heed this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **System Alerts** > **Barometer** > **Storm Alert**.
3 Select an option:

- Select **Status** to turn the alert on or off.
- Select **Rate** to update the rate of barometric pressure change that triggers a storm alert.

Turning On Phone Connection Alerts

You can set your watch to alert you when your paired phone connects and disconnects using Bluetooth® technology.

1. From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Notifications & Alerts** > **System Alerts** > **Phone**.

Sound and Vibration Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Sound & Vibe**. You can also customize these settings for different situations, such as sleep and activities (*Focus Modes*, page 123).

Silent Mode: Select to disable all sounds.

Alert Volume: Use the slider bar to adjust the volume for alerts.

Alert Tones: Plays a tone for alerts.

Button Tones: Plays a tone when you press a button.

Vibration: Sets watch vibrations for alerts and button presses.

Display and Brightness Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Display & Brightness**. You can also customize these settings for different situations, such as sleep and activities (*Focus Modes*, page 123).

Brightness: Sets the brightness level of the screen.

Always On Display: Sets the watch face data to remain visible and turn down the brightness and background. This option impacts the battery and display life (*About the AMOLED Display*, page 153).

Watch Face Seconds: Sets how often the watch face seconds appear when the Always On Display setting is turned on. This option impacts the battery and display life (*About the AMOLED Display*, page 153).

Text Size: Adjusts the size of the text on the screen.

Color Shift: Turns the screen to shades of red, green, or orange so that you can use the watch in low light conditions and help preserve your night vision or reduce eye strain. You can select **Mode** > **Blue Light Filter** to reduce the amount of blue light emitting from the watch. You can select **Schedule** to set the timing of the filters, such as **Before Sleep Start**.

Wake On Alert: Turns on the screen when you receive a notification or alert.

Wake On Gesture: Turns on the screen when you raise and turn your arm to look at your wrist.

Timeout: Sets the length of time before the screen turns off.

Touch: Enables the touchscreen. You can select **Map Only** to enable the touchscreen only on the map screen.

Touch Lock: Locks the touchscreen after the screen turns off. When this setting is enabled, you can swipe down to unlock the touchscreen.

Connectivity

Connectivity features are available for your watch when you pair with your compatible phone (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110). Additional features are available when you connect your watch to a Wi-Fi® network (*Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network*, page 113).

Sensors and Accessories

The D2™ Mach 2 watch has several internal sensors, and you can pair additional wireless sensors for your activities.

Wireless Sensors

Your watch can be paired and used with wireless sensors using ANT+® or Bluetooth® technology (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107). After the devices are paired, you can customize the optional data fields (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66). If your watch was packaged with a sensor, they are already paired.

For information about specific Garmin® sensor compatibility, purchasing, or to view the owner's manual, go to garmin.com for that sensor.

Sensor Type	Description
Applied Ballistics	You can use Applied Ballistics® devices, such as rangefinders or wind sensors, and view additional ballistics information on your watch.
Approach CT10	You can use Approach® golf club sensors to automatically track your golf shots, including location, distance, and club type.
DogTrack	Allows you to receive data from a compatible handheld dog tracking device.
eBike	You can use your watch with your eBike and view bike data, such as battery and range information, during your rides.
Extended Display	You can use the Extended Display mode to display data screens from your D2™ Mach 2 watch on a compatible Edge® bike computer during a ride or triathlon.
External HR	You can use an external sensor, such as the HRM 200, HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, or HRM-Pro™ series heart rate monitor, to view heart rate data during your activities. Some heart rate monitors can also store data or provide advanced running data (*Running Dynamics*, page 107) (*Running Power*, page 108).
Foot Pod	You can use a foot pod to record pace and distance instead of using GPS when you are training indoors or when your GPS signal is weak.
Headphones	You can use Bluetooth headphones to listen to music loaded onto your D2 Mach 2 watch.
inReach	The inReach® remote function allows you to control your inReach satellite communicator using your D2 watch (*Using the inReach® Remote*, page 109).
Lights	You can use Varia™ smart bike lights to improve situational awareness. With a Varia headlight camera, you can also take photos and record video during a ride (*Using the Varia™ Camera Controls*, page 109).
Power	You can use the Rally™ or Vector™ power meter bike pedals to view your power data on your watch. You can adjust your power zones to match your goals and abilities (*Setting Your Power Zones*, page 144), or use range alerts to be notified when you reach a specified power zone (*Setting an Alert*, page 70).
Radar	You can use a Varia rearview bike radar to improve situational awareness and send alerts about approaching vehicles. With a Varia radar camera tail light, you can also take photos and record video during a ride (*Using the Varia™ Camera Controls*, page 109).
Rangefinder	You can use a compatible laser rangefinder to view your distance to the flag while golfing.
RD Pod	You can use a Running Dynamics Pod to record running dynamics data and view it on your watch (*Running Dynamics*, page 107).
Shifting	You can use electronic shifters to display shifting information during a ride. The D2 Mach 2 watch displays current adjustment values when the sensor is in adjustment mode.
Shimano Di2	You can use Shimano® Di2™ electronic shifters to display shifting information during a ride. The D2 Mach 2 watch displays current adjustment values when the sensor is in adjustment mode.
Smart Trainer	You can use your watch with an indoor bike smart trainer to simulate resistance while following a course, ride, or workout (*Using an Indoor Trainer*, page 50).
Spd./Cad.	You can attach speed or cadence sensors to your bike and view the data during your ride. If necessary, you can manually enter your wheel circumference (*Wheel Size and Circumference*, page 165).

Sensor Type	Description
Tempe	You can attach the tempe™ temperature sensor to a secure strap or loop where it is exposed to ambient air, so it provides a consistent source of accurate temperature data.
Trolling Motor	You can use your device as a remote control for your Garmin trolling motor (*Pairing Your Watch and Trolling Motor*, page 31).
Vectronix	You can use Vectronix® rangefinders, and view additional ballistics information on your watch.
Xero Chronograph	You can pair with a Xero® chronograph to access session controls and view ballistics data (*Using the Xero® Chronograph App*, page 29).

Pairing Your Wireless Sensors

The first time you connect a wireless sensor to your watch using ANT+® or Bluetooth® technology, you must pair the watch and sensor. After they are paired, the watch connects to the sensor automatically when you start an activity and the sensor is active and within range. For more information about connection types, go to garmin.com/hrm_connection_types.

1 Put on the heart rate monitor, install the sensor, or press the button to wake up the sensor.

   NOTE: See your wireless sensor owner's manual for pairing information.

2 Bring the watch within 3 m (10 ft.) of the sensor.

   NOTE: Stay 10 m (33 ft.) away from other wireless sensors while pairing.

3 From the watch face, hold •◯.

4 Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Sensors & Accessories** > **Add New**.

5 Select an option:

   - Select **Search All**.
   - Select your sensor type.

   After the sensor is paired with your watch, the sensor status changes from Searching to Connected. Sensor data appears in the data screen loop or a custom data field. You can customize the optional data fields (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

Heart Rate Accessory Running Pace and Distance

The HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, and HRM-Pro™ series accessories calculate your running pace and distance based on your user profile and the motion measured by the sensor on every stride. The heart rate monitor provides running pace and distance when GPS is not available, such as during treadmill running. You can view your running pace and distance on your compatible D2™ Mach 2 watch when connected using ANT+® technology or secure Bluetooth® technology. You can also view it on compatible third-party training apps.

The pace and distance accuracy improves with calibration.

Automatic calibration: The default setting for your watch is **Auto Calibrate**. The heart rate accessory calibrates each time you run outside with it connected to your compatible D2 Mach 2 watch.

NOTE: Automatic calibration does not work for indoor, trail, or ultra run activities (*Tips for Recording Running Pace and Distance*, page 107).

Manual calibration: You can select **Calibrate & Save** after a treadmill run with your connected heart rate accessory (*Calibrating the Treadmill Distance*, page 46).

Tips for Recording Running Pace and Distance

- Update your D2™ Mach 2 watch software (*Product Updates*, page 157).
- Complete several outdoor runs with GPS and your connected HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, or HRM-Pro™ series accessory. It's important that your outdoor range of paces matches your range of paces on the treadmill.
- If your run includes sand or deep snow, go to the sensor settings, and turn off **Auto Calibrate**.
- If you previously connected a compatible foot pod using ANT+® technology, set the foot pod status to **Off**, or remove it from the list of connected sensors.
- Complete a treadmill run with manual calibration (*Calibrating the Treadmill Distance*, page 46).
- If automatic and manual calibrations don't seem accurate, go to the sensor settings, and select **HRM Pace & Distance** > **Reset Calibration Data**.

  NOTE: You can try turning off **Auto Calibrate**, and then manually calibrate again (*Calibrating the Treadmill Distance*, page 46).

Running Dynamics

Running dynamics is real-time feedback about your running form. Your D2™ Mach 2 watch has an accelerometer to calculate five running form metrics. To view all of the running form metrics, you must pair your D2 Mach

2 watch with the HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, HRM-Pro™ series accessory, or other running dynamics accessory that measures torso movement. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running.

Metric	Sensor Type	Description
Cadence	Watch or compatible accessory	Cadence is the number of steps per minute. It displays the total steps (right and left combined).
Stride length	Watch or compatible accessory	Stride length is the length of your stride from one footfall to the next. It is measured in meters.
Vertical oscillation	Watch or compatible accessory	Vertical oscillation is your bounce while running. It displays the vertical motion of your torso, measured in centimeters.
Vertical ratio	Watch or compatible accessory	Vertical ratio is the ratio of vertical oscillation to stride length. It displays a percentage. A lower number typically indicates better running form.
Ground contact time	Watch or compatible accessory	Ground contact time is the amount of time in each step that you spend on the ground while running. It is measured in milliseconds. **NOTE:** Ground contact metrics are not available while walking.
Ground contact time balance	Compatible accessory only	Ground contact time balance displays the left/right balance of your ground contact time while running. It displays a percentage. For example, 53.2 with an arrow pointing left or right.
Step speed loss	HRM 600 only	Step speed loss is how much you slow down when your foot hits the ground while running. It is measured in centimeters per second. A lower number is typically better, as it indicates you have to do less propulsive work to speed back up. **NOTE:** Step speed loss metrics are not available while walking.
Step speed loss percentage	HRM 600 only	Step speed loss percent is how much you slow down when your foot hits the ground as a percentage of your running speed. This accounts for step speed loss typically increasing with faster running speed.

Tips for Missing Running Dynamics Data

This topic provides tips for using a compatible running dynamics accessory. If the accessory is not connected to your watch, the watch automatically switches to wrist-based running dynamics.

- Make sure you have a running dynamics accessory, such as the HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, or HRM-Pro™ series accessory.
- Pair the running dynamics accessory with your watch again, according to the instructions.
- If you are using an HRM 600 accessory, pair it with your watch using the secure Bluetooth® connection, rather than the open connection.

  For more information about connection types, go to garmin.com/hrm_connection_types.
- If you are using an HRM-Fit or HRM-Pro series accessory, pair it with your watch using ANT+® technology, rather than Bluetooth technology.
- If the running dynamics data display shows only zeros, make sure the accessory is worn right-side up.

  NOTE: Some metrics do not appear while walking (*Running Dynamics*, page 107).

Running Power

Garmin® running power is calculated using measured running dynamics information, user mass, environmental data, and other sensor data. The power measurement estimates the amount of power a runner applies to the road surface, and it is displayed in watts. Using running power as a gauge of effort may suit some runners better than using either pace or heart rate. Running power can be more responsive than heart rate for indicating the level of effort, and it can account for the uphills, downhills, and wind, which a pace measurement does not do. For more information, go to garmin.com/performance-data/running.

Running power can be measured using a compatible running dynamics accessory or the watch sensors. You can customize the running power data fields to view your power output and make adjustments to your training (*Data Fields*, page 166). You can set up power alerts to be notified when you reach a specified power zone (*Activity Alerts*, page 70).

Running power zones use default values based on gender, weight, and average ability, and may not match your personal abilities. You can manually adjust your zones on the watch or using your Garmin Connect™ account (*Setting Your Power Zones*, page 144).

Running Power Settings

From the watch face, press ⌚, select **Activities**, select a running activity, press ⌚, select the activity settings, and select **Running Power**.

Status: Enables or disables recording Garmin® running power data. You can use this setting if you prefer to use third-party running power data.

Source: Allows you to select which device to use to record running power data. The Smart Mode option automatically detects and uses the running dynamics accessory, when available. The watch uses wrist-based running power data when an accessory is not connected.

Account for Wind: Enables or disables using wind data when calculating your running power. Wind data is a combination of the speed, heading, and barometer data from your watch and the available wind data from your phone.

Chest Heart Rate While Swimming

The HRM 600, HRM-Pro™ series, HRM-Swim™, and HRM-Tri™ heart rate accessories record and store your heart rate data while you are swimming. To view your heart rate data, you can add heart rate data fields (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

NOTE: Chest heart rate data is not visible on compatible watches while the heart rate monitor is underwater.

You must start a timed activity on your paired watch to view stored heart rate data later. During rest intervals when out of the water, the heart rate accessory sends your heart rate data to your watch. Your watch automatically downloads stored heart rate data when you save your timed swim activity. Your heart rate accessory must be out of the water, active, and within range of the watch (3 m) while data downloads. Your heart rate data can be reviewed in the watch history and on your Garmin Connect™ account.

If both wrist-based heart rate and chest heart rate data are available, your watch uses the chest heart rate data.

Using the Varia™ Camera Controls

NOTICE

Some jurisdictions may prohibit or regulate the recording of video, audio, or photographs, or may require that all parties have knowledge of the recording and provide consent. It is your responsibility to know and follow all laws, regulations, and any other restrictions in jurisdictions where you plan to use this device.

Before you can use the Varia camera controls, you must pair the accessory with your watch (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107).

1. Select an option:
   - Add the **Camera Controls** control to your watch (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).
   - Add the **Camera Controls** glance to your watch (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).
2. From the **Camera Controls** control or glance, select an option:
   - Select ⋮ > ⚙ to view the camera settings.
   - Select ⋮ > ● to record the ride.
   - Select 📷 to take a photo.
   - Select ▶ to save a clip.

inReach® Remote

The inReach remote function allows you to control your inReach satellite communicator using your D2™ watch. Go to garmin.com for more information about compatible devices.

Using the inReach® Remote

Before you can use the inReach remote function, you must pair your inReach satellite communicator (*Pairing Your Wireless Sensors*, page 107), then add the inReach glance to the glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).

1. Turn on the inReach satellite communicator.
2. On your D2™ watch, press ⌚ from the watch face to view the inReach glance.
3. Press ⌚ to search for your inReach satellite communicator.
4. Press ⌚ to pair your inReach satellite communicator.
5. Press ⌚, and select an option:
   - To send an SOS message, select **Initiate SOS**.

     NOTE: You should only use the SOS function in a real emergency situation.
   - To send a text message, select **Messages** > **New Message**, select the message contacts, and enter the message text or select a quick text option.
   - To send a preset message, select **Send Preset**, and select a message from the list.
   - To view the timer and distance traveled during an activity, select **Tracking**.

Phone Connectivity Features

Phone connectivity features are available for your D2™ watch when you pair it using the Garmin Connect™ app (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110).

- App features from the Garmin Connect app (*Garmin Connect™*, page 118)
- App features from the Connect IQ™ app, and more (*Phone Apps and Computer Applications*, page 118)
- Glances (*Glances*, page 78)
- Controls menu features (*Controls*, page 74)
- Safety and tracking features (*Safety and Tracking Features*, page 138)
- Phone interactions, such as notifications (*Enabling Phone Notifications*, page 111)

Pairing Your Phone

To use the connected features on your watch, you must pair it directly through the Garmin Connect™ app, instead of from the Bluetooth® settings on your phone.

NOTE: You can go to garmin.com/ble for information about Bluetooth phone compatibility information. You can go to garmin.com/voicefunctionality for voice functionality compatibility information.

1 Select an option:
   - During the initial setup on your watch, select ✔ when you are prompted to pair with your phone.
   - If you previously skipped the pairing process, from the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Pair Phone**.
   - If you want to pair a new phone, from the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Phone** > **Pair Phone**.

     NOTE: This option only appears when your watch is not currently connected to a paired phone.
2 Scan the QR code with your phone, and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing and setup process.
3 To use the LTE and satellite connected features of your D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch, download and install the Garmin Messenger™ app using your phone (*Garmin Messenger™ App*, page 121), and follow the on-screen instructions to activate an inReach® service plan.

Calling from the Phone App

NOTE: This feature is available only if your watch is connected to a compatible phone using Bluetooth® technology.

1 From the watch face, press ◯•.
2 Select **Phone**.
3 Select an option:
   - To dial a phone number using the dial pad, select ⠿, dial the phone number, and select 📞.
   - To call a phone number from your contacts, select 👤, select a contact name, and select a phone number (*Adding Contacts*, page 138).
   - To view recent calls made or received on the watch, swipe up.

     NOTE: The watch does not sync with the recent calls list on your phone.
4 Wait while the call connects.
5 Swipe up for call options.
6 Select an option:
   - To mute the watch microphone, select 🎙.
   - To adjust the watch speaker volume, select 🔊.
   - To transfer the call from your watch to your connected phone, select ⇥.
7 Select ☎ to end the call.

Using the Phone Assistant

To use the phone assistant, your watch must be connected to a compatible phone using Bluetooth® technology (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110). Go to garmin.com/voicefunctionality for information about compatible phones.

You can communicate with the your phone's voice assistant using the integrated speaker and microphone in your watch. Go to garmin.com/voicefunctionality/tips for tips about how to set up your phone assistant.

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, press ◯• and select **Phone Assistant**.

- Hold , and select **Phone Assistant**.
  NOTE: You can customize the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).
- Say **"Phone Assistant"**.
  NOTE: You can enable the **"Phone Assistant"** wake word in the system settings (*Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch*, page 151).

When connected to your phone's voice assistant, appears.

2 Say a command phrase, such as *Call Mom* or *Send a text message*.
  NOTE: Communication from the phone assistant is audible only.

Enabling Phone Notifications

You can customize how notifications from your paired phone sound and appear on your watch during normal use.

NOTE: You can customize notifications during sleep or activities in the Focus Modes settings (*Focus Modes*, page 123).

1 From the watch face, hold .
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Phone** > **Notifications**.
3 Select an option:
  - To enable phone notifications, select **Status** > **On**.
  - To enable notifications for phone calls, select **Calls**, and select status and alert options.
  - To enable notifications for text messages, select **Texts**, and select status and alert options.
  - To enable notifications for phone apps, select **Apps**, and select status and alert options.
  - To view app notification permissions, select **Apps**, and scroll to view the list of apps.
    NOTE: Using your phone, you can manage which app notifications appear on your watch.
    On iOS® phones, when your phone and watch receive a notification from an app, the app appears in the **Connected Apps** list on your watch. In the Garmin Connect™ app, you can select **•••** > **Settings** > **Connected Apps**, select an app, and select what data to share. You can also select **Disconnect** to disconnect the app from your watch.
    On Android™ phones, in the Garmin Connect app, you can select **•••** > **Settings** > **Notifications** > **App Notifications**, and select which app notifications to enable. On your watch, the **Blocked Apps** list shows apps that do not send notifications to your watch.
  - To hide notification details until you perform an action, select **Privacy**, and select an option.
  - To change how long the watch displays notifications, select **Timeout**.
  - To add a signature to your text message replies from your watch, select **Signature**.
    NOTE: This feature is available only for compatible Android phones.

Viewing Notifications

You can view your phone notifications on your watch from several menu locations.

1 Select an option:
  - From the watch face, swipe down to view the notification center.
  - From the watch face, swipe up to view the notifications glance.
    TIP: From the glance, you can swipe left to dismiss a notification.
  - From the watch face, press , and select **Notifications** to view the notifications app.
  - Hold , and select **Notifications** to view the notifications control.
2 Select a notification.
3 Press for more options.
4 Scroll to the top of the notifications, and select **Dismiss All** to dismiss all notifications.

Receiving an Incoming Phone Call

When you receive a phone call on your connected phone, the D2™ watch displays the name or phone number of the caller.

- To accept the call, select .
- To decline the call, select .
- To decline the call and immediately send a text message reply, select **Reply**, and select a message from the list.

NOTE: To send a text message reply, you must be connected to a compatible Android™ phone using Bluetooth® technology.

Replying to a Text Message

NOTE: This feature is available only for compatible Android™ phones.

When you receive a text message notification on your watch, you can send a quick reply by selecting from a list of messages. You can customize messages in the Garmin Connect™ app.

NOTE: This feature sends text messages using your phone. Regular text message limits and charges from your carrier and phone plan may apply. Contact your mobile carrier for more information about text message charges or limits.

1. From the watch face, press to view the notification center.
2. Select a text message notification.
3. Press .
4. Select **Reply**.
5. Select a message from the list.
   Your phone sends the selected message as an SMS text message.

Locating a Lost Device

You can use this feature to help locate a lost Garmin® device that is within range of a paired phone.

1. From the Garmin Connect™ app, select ••• > **Garmin Devices**.
2. Select your device.
3. Select **Find My Device**.
   The phone begins searching for the paired D2™ Mach 2 watch. The watch vibrates and beeps until you press a button.
4. From the Garmin Connect app, select **OK**.

Turning Off the Bluetooth® Phone Connection

You can turn off the Bluetooth phone connection from the controls menu.

NOTE: You can customize the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).

1. Hold to view the controls menu.
2. Select .
   Refer to the owner's manual for your phone to turn off Bluetooth technology on your phone.

Turning On and Off Find My Phone Alerts

1. From the watch face, hold .
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Phone** > **Find My Phone Alerts**.

Locating a Phone Lost During a GPS Activity

Your D2™ Mach 2 watch automatically stores a GPS location when your paired phone is disconnected during a GPS activity. You can use this feature to help locate a phone that is lost during an activity.

For more information, see garmin.com/findmyphonewithgps.

1. Start a GPS activity.
2. When prompted to navigate to the last known location of your device, select ✔.
3. Navigate to the location on the map (*Saving or Navigating to a Location on the Map*, page 130).
4. Press to view a compass pointing to the location (optional).
5. When your watch is within Bluetooth® range of your phone, the Bluetooth signal strength appears on the screen.
   The signal strength increases as you move closer to your phone.

Wi-Fi® Connectivity Features

Activity uploads to your Garmin Connect™ account: Automatically sends your activity to your Garmin Connect account as soon as you finish recording the activity.

Audio content: Allows you to sync audio content from third-party providers.

Course updates: Allows you to download and install golf course updates.

Map downloads: Allows you to download and install maps.

Software updates: You can download and install the latest software.

Workouts and training plans: You can browse for and select workouts and training plans on your Garmin Connect account. The next time your watch has a Wi-Fi connection, the files are sent to your watch.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network

You must connect your watch to the Garmin Connect™ app on your phone or to the Garmin Express™ application on your computer before you can connect to a Wi-Fi network.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Wi-Fi** > **My Networks** > **Search for Networks**.
   The watch displays a list of nearby Wi-Fi networks.
3. Select a network.
4. If necessary, enter the password for the network.

The watch connects to the network, and the network is added to the list of saved networks. The watch reconnects to this network automatically when it is within range.

LTE and Satellite Connected Features for D2™ Mach 2 Pro

⚠ CAUTION

Satellite coverage for this device is only available in the continental United States, select parts of Canada, and most of Europe. In areas of the globe above 65 degrees north, the satellite network will orbit below the horizon and be unable to provide a clear connection.

LTE coverage is available in select countries that have LTE mobile service. LTE coverage in specific areas within each of the countries is dependent on the network coverage and network conditions of each respective carrier.

NOTICE

The LTE and satellite connected features, including SOS, require an active inReach® service plan, and are only available for the D2 Mach 2 Pro watch.

Your D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan can connect to geostationary communication satellites and LTE-M cellular networks to provide on- and off-grid communication, so that you can stay connected while leaving your phone at home. By default, when your phone is within Bluetooth® range, your watch uses your phone's LTE connection.

When your phone is not within Bluetooth range, your watch can connect to the LTE-M cellular networks from certain roaming providers. This coverage is not available worldwide.

If an LTE-M network is not available, some features are available through geostationary communication satellites. Geostationary communication satellites sit in a fixed position in the sky, and are much farther away than the GNSS satellites in low Earth orbit that are used for navigation.

Feature	Available Using Phone Connection	Available Using D2 Mach 2 Pro LTE Connection	Available Using D2 Mach 2 Pro Communication Satellite Connection
Messenger app check-ins and text messages (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Messenger app photo messages	Yes	Yes	No
Messenger app voice messages (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18)	Yes	Yes	No
Messenger Calls voice calls (*Calling from the Messenger Calls App*, page 18)	Yes	Yes	No
Safety and tracking features, such as assistance, incident detection, and LiveTrack (*Safety and Tracking Features*, page 138)	Yes	Yes	No
SOS (*SOS for D2™ Mach 2 Pro*, page 116)	Yes	Yes	Yes
Weather	Yes	Yes	Yes, only on the Garmin Messenger™ app on your phone

Connecting to Communication Satellites

⚠ CAUTION

Satellite coverage for this device is only available in the continental United States, select parts of Canada, and most of Europe. In areas of the globe above 65 degrees north, the satellite network will orbit below the horizon and be unable to provide a clear connection.

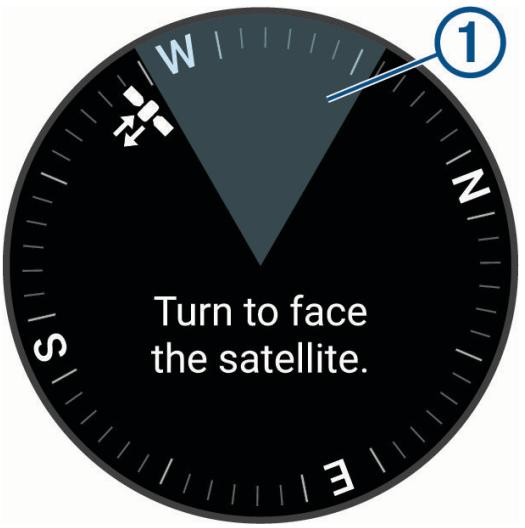
When using a geostationary communication satellite connection, you must ensure that you have a clear view of the sky and that you stop moving, use the pointing interface to orient your device toward the satellite, and tilt the device at the correct elevation angle. Connecting to the satellites may take 30 seconds or more of good satellite signal strength.

On a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, you can connect to a two-way geostationary communication satellite when you are outside of an LTE coverage area.

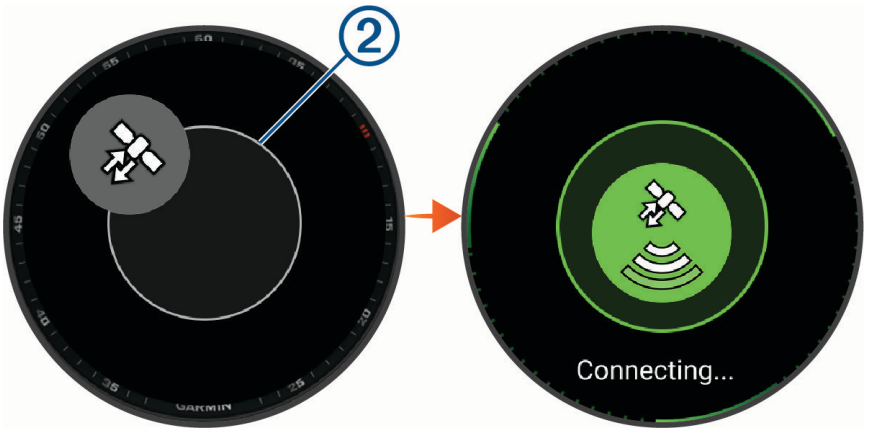
Communication satellites travel in a geostationary orbit, meaning their position in the sky is fixed, and are much farther away than the GNSS satellites in low Earth orbit that are used for navigation. In order to connect to a geostationary communication satellite, you must use the pointing interface of your watch to point your watch in the direction of the satellite and tilt the watch at the correct elevation angle. If you are unable to make a connection due to obstructions, then you must move to a new location where you have a clear view of the satellite.

1. While outside of an LTE coverage area, select an option:
   - Initiate an SOS rescue (*Initiating an SOS Rescue*, page 116).
   - Send a **Messenger** text message (*Using the Messenger App*, page 18).
   - Send a check-in message (*Sending a Check-In Message*, page 115).
   - Check for new messages (*Checking for Messages*, page 115).

   Animated instructions appear on the watch.
2. Hold the watch up, and turn until you are facing the satellite with the highlighted region on the compass ① covering the icon.



3. Rotate the watch until the icon is enclosed in the circle ②.



4 Wait while the watch connects to the satellite and sends your communication data.

Sending a Test Message

⚠ WARNING

You should send a test message outdoors before using the watch on a trip to ensure your service plan is active.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold ⌚, and select **Messenger**.
   - From the watch face, press ⌚, and select **Messenger**.
2 Select ✎.
3 Send a message to **testinreach@garmin.com**.

   NOTE: Your watch should automatically receive a message from this address after activating your service plan.
4 Wait while the watch sends a test message.

   When you receive a confirmation message, your watch is ready to use.

Sending a Check-In Message

Check-in messages are messages with predefined text and recipients.

TIP: You can customize check-in message recipients in the Garmin Messenger™ app. From the **Device** tab in the app, select **Check-In** > **Edit Check-in Contacts**.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold ⌚, and select **Messenger Check-in**.
   - Hold ⌚, and select **Messenger** > ☑.
   - From the watch face, press ⌚, and select **Messenger** > ☑.
2 Select a message.
3 If you are outside of an LTE coverage area, connect to a communication satellite (*Connecting to Communication Satellites*, page 114).

Checking for Messages

Your watch continuously checks for new messages in Always On LTE mode (*LTE and Satellite Settings*, page 116). In Auto LTE mode, when you use an LTE feature, such as the Messenger or Messenger Calls app, your watch temporarily turns on LTE connectivity and checks for new messages.

When you are not connected to an LTE network, the watch does not automatically check for messages, but you can manually check for messages. During a manual check, your watch connects to the LTE or satellite network and receives messages waiting to be sent to your watch.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold ⌚, and select **Messenger** > ↻.
   - From the watch face, press ⌚, and select **Messenger** > ↻.
2 If you are outside of an LTE coverage area, connect to a communication satellite (*Connecting to Communication Satellites*, page 114).

LTE and Satellite Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **LTE & Satellite**.

Status: Enables LTE and communication satellite connectivity. You can enable one, both, or neither connectivity type.

LTE Mode: Sets the LTE connectivity mode. The Auto option temporarily turns on LTE connectivity when you use an LTE feature, such as the Messenger or Messenger Calls apps.

Viewing inReach® Plan Details and Usage

You can view inReach service plan details and data use on the D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch. Data use includes the number of satellite messages and check-in messages sent during the billing cycle. The data use counters reset automatically at the beginning of each billing cycle.

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **inReach Plan Usage**.
3 If you have made changes to your service plan in the Garmin Messenger™ app, select **Refresh**.

SOS for D2™ Mach 2 Pro

⚠ WARNING

Before you can use the SOS function, you must have a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan. Always test your device outdoors before using it on a trip.

When using a geostationary communication satellite connection to activate the SOS function, you must ensure that you have a clear view of the sky and that you stop moving, use the pointing interface to orient your device toward the satellite, and tilt the device to the correct elevation angle. Connecting to the satellites may take 30 seconds or more of good satellite signal strength.

⚠ CAUTION

Satellite coverage for this device is only available in the continental United States, select parts of Canada, and most of Europe. In areas of the globe above 65 degrees north, the satellite network will orbit below the horizon and be unable to provide a clear connection.

LTE coverage is available in select countries that have LTE mobile service. LTE coverage in specific areas within each of the countries is dependent on the network coverage and network conditions of each respective carrier.

NOTICE

Some jurisdictions regulate or prohibit the use of satellite communications devices. It is the responsibility of the user to know and follow all applicable laws in the jurisdictions where the device is intended to be used.

During an emergency, you can use your D2 Mach 2 Pro device to contact the Garmin Response℠ center to request help. Initiating an SOS rescue sends a message to the Garmin Response team, and they notify the appropriate emergency responders of your situation. You can communicate with the Garmin Response team during your emergency while you wait for help to arrive. You should only use the SOS function in a real emergency situation.

Initiating an SOS Rescue

When you initiate an SOS rescue on your D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch, you can correspond with the Garmin Response℠ team to communicate the nature of your emergency. Your replies let the emergency response service know that you are capable of interacting with them during the rescue.

NOTE: You can also initiate an SOS rescue and interact with the Garmin Response team using the Garmin Messenger™ app. You must have an active inReach® service plan to use the SOS feature in the Garmin Messenger app. To view a demonstration of the SOS feature, you can hold •◯, and select **Safety & Tracking** > **Satellite SOS Demo**.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold •◯ for five seconds.
   - Hold •◯, and select **SOS**.

   The watch vibrates and sounds an alarm.
2 Wait for the SOS countdown.

   If you are connected to the LTE network, your watch sends a default message to the emergency response service with details about your location.

   TIP: Before the countdown is complete, you can hold any button to cancel the SOS message.

3 If you are outside of an LTE coverage area, connect to a communication satellite (*Connecting to Communication Satellites*, page 114).
   When you connect to a communication satellite, your watch sends a default message to the emergency response service with details about your location.
4 In the SOS message thread, select **Reply**.
5 Select an option:
   - To reply with a default message, select a message.
   - To compose a custom message, select **Keyboard**, and enter your message.
   - To reply with a voice message, select 🎙, and record your message.
     NOTE: Voice messages are only available with an LTE connection.

Canceling an SOS Request

If you no longer need assistance, you can cancel an SOS request after it is sent to the Garmin Response℠ team.

1 Open the SOS message thread.
2 Select **End Emergency**.
3 Select a reason for ending the SOS request.
   If you are connected to the LTE network, your watch sends the cancellation request.
4 If you are outside of an LTE coverage area, connect to a communication satellite (*Connecting to Communication Satellites*, page 114).
   When you connect to a communication satellite, your watch sends the cancellation request.
5 Wait until you receive a confirmation message from the Garmin Response team.
   The watch returns to normal operation.

Garmin® Share

NOTICE

It is your responsibility to use discretion when sharing information with others. Always ensure you are aware of and comfortable with the individual with whom you share information.

The Garmin Share feature allows you to use Bluetooth® technology to wirelessly share your data with other compatible Garmin devices. With Garmin Share enabled and compatible Garmin devices in range of each other, you can select saved locations, courses, and workouts to transfer to another device through a direct, secured device-to-device connection, without the need for a phone or Wi-Fi® connectivity.

Sharing Data with Garmin Share

Before you can use this feature, you must have Bluetooth® technology enabled on both compatible devices, and they must be within 3 m (10 ft.) of each other. When prompted, you must also consent to share your data with other Garmin® devices using Garmin Share.

Your D2™ watch can send and receive data when connected to another compatible Garmin device (*Receiving Data with Garmin Share*, page 118). You can also transfer your data between different devices. For example, you can share a favorite course from your Edge® bike computer to your compatible Garmin watch.

1 From the watch face, press ⌚.
2 Select **Garmin Share** > **Share**.
3 Select a category, and select one item.
4 Select an option:
   - Select **Share**.
   - Select **Add More** > **Share** to select more than one item to share.
5 Wait while the device locates compatible devices.
6 Select a device.
7 Confirm the six-digit PIN matches on both devices, and select ✔.
8 Wait while the devices transfer the data.
9 Select **Share Again** to share the same items with another user (optional).
10 Select **Done**.

Receiving Data with Garmin Share

Before you can use this feature, you must have Bluetooth® technology enabled on both compatible devices, and they must be within 3 m (10 ft.) of each other. When prompted, you must also consent to share your data with other Garmin® devices using Garmin Share.

1 From the watch face, press ◯.
2 Select **Garmin Share**.
3 Wait while the device locates compatible devices in range.
4 Select ✔.
5 Confirm the six-digit PIN matches on both devices, and select ✔.
6 Wait while the devices transfer the data.
7 Select **Done**.

Garmin Share Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Garmin Share**.

Status: Enables the watch to send and receive items through Garmin Share.

Forget Devices: Removes all of the devices the watch has previously shared items with.

Phone Apps and Computer Applications

You can connect your watch to multiple Garmin® phone apps and computer applications using the same Garmin account.

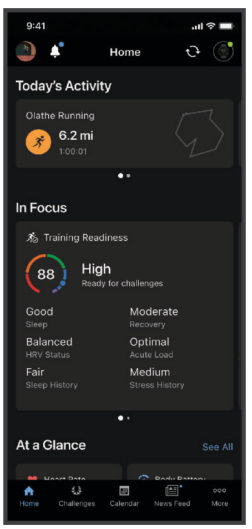
Garmin Connect™

You can connect with your friends on Garmin Connect. Garmin Connect gives you the tools to track, analyze, share, and encourage each other. Record the events of your active lifestyle including runs, walks, rides, swims, hikes, and more. To sign up for a free account, you can download the app from the app store on your phone (garmin.com/connectapp), or go to connect.garmin.com.

Store your activities: After you complete and save an activity with your watch, you can upload that activity to your Garmin Connect account and keep it as long as you want.

Analyze your data: You can view more detailed information about your activity, including time, distance, elevation, heart rate, calories burned, cadence, running dynamics, an overhead map view, pace and speed charts, and customizable reports.

NOTE: Some data requires an optional accessory such as a heart rate monitor.



Plan your training: You can choose a fitness goal and load one of the day-by-day training plans.

Track your progress: You can track your daily steps, join a friendly competition with your connections, and meet your goals.

Share your activities: You can connect with friends to follow each other's activities or share links to your activities.

Manage your settings: You can customize your watch and user settings on your Garmin Connect account.

Garmin Connect+™ Subscription

You can enhance the data, connections, and training available on your Garmin Connect account with a Garmin Connect+ subscription. To sign up, you can download the Garmin Connect app from the app store on your phone, or go to connect.garmin.com.

Active Intelligence (AI): Receive AI insights about your data and activities, including nutrition.

LiveTrack+: Send LiveTrack text messages, receive a personalized profile page, and view previous LiveTrack sessions.

Follow Garmin Trails: Access outdoor trails and courses recommended by Garmin® databases and other Garmin users, with pictures, ratings, trip reports, and more.

Track indoor activities: View your indoor activity and workout data in real time, enabling you to adjust your performance during the activity.

Training guidance: Get additional expert support and guidance for select Garmin Coach training plans.

Nutritional logging: Track your daily nutrition with extensive food databases and view detailed reports on macronutrients and calories consumed. From your compatible Garmin watch, you can easily view your daily nutritional overview, log food manually, and receive morning and evening nutrition reports. From the Garmin Connect app, you can scan the UPC, log new food items, create nutrition goals, and more.

Performance dashboard: View your training data your way with customized charts and graphs, including nutrition metrics.

Social features: Gain access to exclusive badges, badge challenges, and double points for challenges. You can update your profile avatar with customizable frames.

Using the Garmin Connect™ App

After you pair your watch with your phone (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110), you can use the Garmin Connect app to upload all of your activity data to your Garmin Connect account.

1. Verify the Garmin Connect app is running on your phone.
2. Bring your watch within 10 m (30 ft.) of your phone.

   Your watch automatically syncs your data with the Garmin Connect app and your Garmin Connect account.

Updating the Software Using the Garmin Connect™ App

Before you can update your watch software using the Garmin Connect app, you must have a Garmin Connect account, and you must pair the watch with a compatible phone (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110).

Sync your watch with the Garmin Connect app (*Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 119).

When new software is available, the Garmin Connect app automatically sends the update to your watch.

Unified Training Status

When you use more than one Garmin® device with your Garmin Connect™ account, you can choose which device is the primary data source for everyday use and for training purposes.

From the Garmin Connect app, select ••• > **Settings**.

Primary Training Device: Sets the priority data source for training metrics like your training status and load focus.

Primary Wearable: Sets the priority data source for daily health metrics like steps and sleep. This should be the wearable you use most often.

TIP: For the most accurate results, Garmin recommends that you sync often with your Garmin Connect account.

Syncing Activities and Performance Measurements

You can sync activities and performance measurements from other Garmin® devices to your D2™ Mach 2 watch using your Garmin Connect™ account. This allows your watch to more accurately reflect your training and fitness. For example, you can record a ride with an Edge® bike computer, and view your activity details and recovery time on your D2 Mach 2 watch.

Sync your D2 Mach 2 watch and other Garmin devices to your Garmin Connect account.

TIP: You can set a primary training device and primary wearable in the Garmin Connect app (*Unified Training Status*, page 119).

Recent activities and performance measurements from your other Garmin devices appear on your D2 Mach 2 watch.

Using Garmin Connect™ on Your Computer

The Garmin Express™ application connects your watch to your Garmin Connect account using a computer. You can use the Garmin Express application to upload your activity data to your Garmin Connect account and to send data, such as workouts or training plans, from the Garmin Connect website to your watch. You can

also add music to your watch (*Downloading Personal Audio Content*, page 141). You can also install software updates and manage your Connect IQ™ apps.

1 Connect the watch to your computer using the USB cable.
2 Go to **garmin.com/express**.
3 Download and install the Garmin Express application.
4 Open the Garmin Express application, and select **Add Device**.
5 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Updating the Software Using Garmin Express™

Before you can update your device software, you must have a Garmin Connect™ account, and you must download the Garmin Express application.

1 Connect the device to your computer using the USB cable.
   When new software is available, Garmin Express sends it to your device.
2 Follow the on-screen instructions.
3 Do not disconnect your device from the computer during the update process.
   If you have already set up your device with Wi-Fi connectivity, Garmin Connect can automatically download available software updates to your device when it connects using Wi-Fi.

Manually Syncing Data with Garmin Connect™

NOTE: You can add options to the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).

1 Hold ⌚ to view the controls menu.
2 Select **Sync**.

Connect IQ Features

You can add Connect IQ™ features to your watch using the Connect IQ store on your watch or phone (garmin.com/connectiqapp).

NOTE: For your safety, Connect IQ features are not available while diving. This ensures that all dive capabilities function as designed.

Watch Faces: Customize the appearance of the clock.

Device Apps: Add interactive features to your watch, such as glances and new outdoor and fitness activity types.

Data Fields: Download new data fields that present sensor, activity, and history data in new ways. You can add Connect IQ data fields to built-in features and pages.

Music: Add music providers to your watch.

Downloading Connect IQ™ Features

Before you can download features from the Connect IQ app, you must pair your Garmin® watch or bike computer with your phone (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110).

1 From the app store on your phone, install and open the Connect IQ app.
2 If necessary, select your watch or bike computer.
3 Select a Connect IQ feature.
4 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Downloading Connect IQ™ Features Using Your Computer

1 Connect the watch to your computer using a USB cable.
2 Go to **apps.garmin.com**, and sign in.
3 Select a Connect IQ feature, and download it.
4 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Garmin Dive™ App

The Garmin Dive app allows you to upload your dive logs from your compatible Garmin® device. You can add more detailed information about your dives, including environmental conditions, photos, notes, and dive buddies. You can use the map to browse for new dive locations, and view the location details and photos shared by other users.

The Garmin Dive app syncs your data with your Garmin Connect™ account. You can download the Garmin Dive app from the app store on your phone (garmin.com/diveapp).

Garmin Explore™

The Garmin Explore website and app allow you to create courses, waypoints, and collections, plan trips, sync tracks, upload activities, and use cloud storage. They offer advanced planning both online and offline, allowing you to share and sync data with your compatible Garmin® device. You can use the app to download maps for offline access, and then navigate anywhere without using your cellular service.

You can download the Garmin Explore app from the app store on your phone (garmin.com/exploreapp), or you can go to explore.garmin.com.

Garmin Messenger™ App

⚠ WARNING

The inReach® features of the Garmin Messenger app on your phone, including SOS, tracking, and inReach Weather, are not available without a connected inReach device and an active inReach service plan. Always test the app outdoors before using it on a trip.

⚠ CAUTION

The non-satellite messaging features of the Garmin Messenger app on your phone should not be solely relied upon as a primary method to obtain emergency assistance.

NOTICE

The app works over both the internet (using a wireless connection or cellular data on your phone) and the satellite network (using an inReach device). If you are using cellular data, your paired phone must be equipped with a data plan and be in an area of network coverage where data is available. If you are in an area without network coverage, you must have an active inReach service plan for your device to use the satellite network.

You can use the app to message other Garmin Messenger app users, including friends and family without Garmin® devices. Anyone can download the app and connect their phone, allowing them to communicate with other app users over the internet (no login is required). App users can also create group messaging threads with other SMS phone numbers. New members added to the group message can download the app to see what others are saying.

Messages sent using a wireless connection or cellular data on your phone do not incur data charges or additional charges on your inReach service plan. Messages received may incur charges if message delivery is attempted over both the satellite network and the internet. Standard text messaging rates for your cellular data plan apply.

You can download the Garmin Messenger app from the app store on your phone (garmin.com/messengerapp).

Garmin Golf™ App

The Garmin Golf app allows you to upload scorecards from your D2™ Mach 2 device to view detailed statistics and shot analyses. Golfers can compete with each other at different courses using the Garmin Golf app. More than 43,000 courses have leaderboards that anyone can join. You can set up a tournament event and invite players to compete. With a Garmin Golf membership, you can access additional features, such as green contour data and more.

The Garmin Golf app syncs your data with your Garmin Connect™ account. You can download the Garmin Golf app from the app store on your phone (garmin.com/golfapp).

Connecting to the Garmin Pilot™ App

When you pair your watch with the Garmin Pilot app, you can transfer flight plans to your watch. With Connext® connectivity, you can view aircraft information at a glance for a connected cockpit solution (*Connext® Avionics Connectivity*, page 121). The Garmin Pilot app is available from the app store for some mobile devices (garmin.com/pilotapp). See the app store for your mobile device for availability and compatibility information.

Your D2™ Mach 2 watch connects to the Garmin Pilot app using Bluetooth® technology. Go to garmin.com/ble for compatibility information.

1. Pair your phone with your D2 Mach 2 watch (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110).
2. From the app store on your phone, install and open the Garmin Pilot app.
3. Sign in to the Garmin Pilot app with your Garmin® account login credentials.
4. In the Garmin Pilot app, select **Devices** > **All Devices**, and select your watch.

Connext® Avionics Connectivity

Connext connectivity delivers a connected cockpit solution. When you pair your watch with the Garmin Pilot™ app, you can transfer flight plans and follow them using your watch (*Sending a Flight Plan to Your Watch*, page 37). When you also pair a compatible GDL® 60 datalink or Flight Stream 510 wireless gateway, you can

enable automatic flight plan updates and view flight data on your watch, such as alerts, altitude, GPS position, and more (*Starting a Flight*, page 34).

Focus Modes

Focus modes adjust the watch settings and behavior for different situations, such as sleep and activities. When you change the settings with a focus mode enabled, the settings are updated only for that focus mode.

Customizing a Default Focus Mode

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Focus Modes**.
3 Select a focus mode.
4 Select an option:

NOTE: Not all options are available for all focus modes.

- Select **Status** to turn the focus mode on or off.
- Select **Schedule** to configure the schedule.
- Select **Watch Face** to change the watch face.
- Select **Satellites** to set the GNSS satellite systems to use for all activities.

  TIP: You can customize the **Satellites** setting for individual activities (*Activity Settings*, page 67).
- Select **Voice Alerts** to enable voice alerts during activities (*Playing Voice Alerts During an Activity*, page 71).
- In the **Notifications & Alerts** section, select an option to configure phone notifications, health and wellness alerts, or system alerts (*Notifications and Alerts Settings*, page 101).
- In the **Sound & Vibe** section, select an option to configure tones and vibration settings (*Sound and Vibration Settings*, page 104).
- In the **Display & Brightness** section, select an option to configure the screen settings (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
- In the **Connectivity** section, select an option to configure the LTE and communication satellite settings (*LTE and Satellite Settings*, page 116).
- Select **Name** to edit the name of the focus mode.
- Select **Icon** to update the icon symbol or color.
- Select **Add** to add more customizations.
- Select **Delete Focus** to remove the focus mode.
- Select **Defaults** to restore the default settings.

Creating a Custom Focus Mode

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Focus Modes** > **Add**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Standard** to create a custom focus mode to be used any time.
   - Select **Activity** to configure a focus mode for a specific activity.
4 Enter a name for the focus mode, and select ✔.
5 Select an icon and color.
6 Select an option:
   - Select **Notifications & Alerts** to configure the phone and watch notifications and alerts (*Notifications and Alerts Settings*, page 101).
   - Select **Sound & Vibe** to configure the settings for tones, volume, and vibration (*Sound and Vibration Settings*, page 104).
   - Select **Display & Brightness** to configure the screen settings (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
   - Select **Connectivity** to configure LTE and satellite settings (*LTE and Satellite Settings*, page 116).
7 Select **Done**.
8 Select an option:

Not all options are available for both Standard and Activity focus modes.

- Select **Status** to turn the custom focus mode on or off.
- Select **Schedule** to configure the schedule.
- Select **Watch Face** to update the watch face
- Select **Auto-Triggered** to choose which activity will trigger the custom activity focus mode.

- Select **Satellites** to set the GNSS satellite option.
- Select **Voice Alerts** to enable voice alerts.
- Select **Name** to edit the name of the custom focus mode.
- Select **Icon** to edit the custom focus mode icon symbol and color.

Health and Wellness Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Health & Wellness**.

Wrist Heart Rate: Customizes the wrist heart rate monitor settings (*Wrist Heart Rate Monitor Settings*, page 126).

Pulse Oximeter: Sets the pulse oximeter mode (*Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode*, page 127).

Move IQ: Enables Move IQ® events. When your movements match familiar exercise patterns, the Move IQ feature automatically detects the event and displays it in your timeline. The Move IQ events show activity type and duration, but they do not appear in your activities list or newsfeed. For more detail and accuracy, you can record a timed activity on your device.

Wrist Heart Rate

Your watch has a wrist-based heart rate monitor, and you can view your heart rate data on the heart rate glance (*Viewing Glances*, page 80).

The watch is also compatible with chest heart rate monitors. If both wrist-based heart rate and chest heart rate data are available when you start an activity, your watch uses the chest heart rate data.

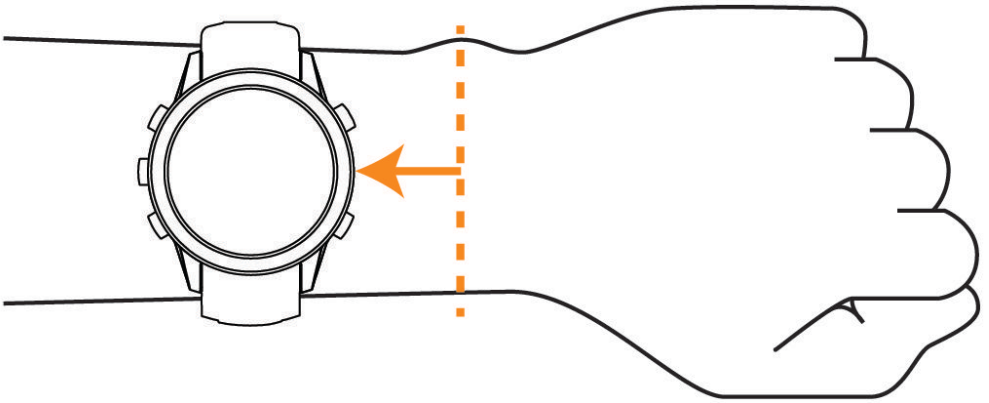
Wearing the Watch

⚠ CAUTION

Some users may experience skin irritation after prolonged use of the watch, especially if the user has sensitive skin or allergies. If you notice any skin irritation, remove the watch and give your skin time to heal. To help prevent skin irritation, ensure the watch is clean and dry, and do not overtighten the watch on your wrist. For more information, go to garmin.com/fitandcare.

- Wear the watch above your wrist bone.

  NOTE: The watch should be snug but comfortable. For more accurate heart rate readings, the watch should not shift while running or exercising. For pulse oximeter readings, you should remain motionless.



  NOTE: While diving, the watch should stay in contact with your skin, and it should not bump into other wrist-worn devices.

  NOTE: The optical sensor is located on the back of the watch.
- See *Tips for Erratic Heart Rate Data*, page 125 for more information about wrist-based heart rate.
- See *Tips for Erratic Pulse Oximeter Data*, page 127 for more information about the pulse oximeter sensor.
- For more information about accuracy, go to **garmin.com/ataccuracy**.
- For more information about watch wear and care, go to **garmin.com/fitandcare**.

Tips for Erratic Heart Rate Data

If the heart rate data is erratic or does not appear, you can try these tips. For more information on your heart rate sensor, go to garmin.com/heartrate.

- Clean and dry your arm before putting on the watch.
- Avoid wearing sunscreen, lotion, and insect repellent under the watch.
- Avoid scratching the heart rate sensor on the back of the watch.
- Wear the watch above your wrist bone. The watch should be snug but comfortable.
- Warm up for 5 to 10 minutes and get a heart rate reading before starting your activity.

  NOTE: In cold environments, warm up indoors.
- Rinse the watch with fresh water after each workout.

- While exercising, use a silicone or nylon band.

Wrist Heart Rate Monitor Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Health & Wellness** > **Wrist Heart Rate**.

Status: Enables the wrist heart rate monitor. The default value is Auto, which automatically uses the wrist heart rate monitor unless you pair an external heart rate monitor.

NOTE: Disabling the wrist heart rate monitor also disables the wrist-based pulse oximeter sensor. You can perform a manual reading from the pulse oximeter glance.

Source Switching: Selects the best source of heart rate data when wearing your watch and an external heart rate monitor. For more information, go to www.garmin.com/dynamicsourceswitching/.

Broadcast Heart Rate: Broadcasts your heart rate data to a paired device (*Broadcasting Heart Rate Data*, page 126).

Broadcasting Heart Rate Data

You can broadcast your heart rate data from your watch and view it on paired devices. Broadcasting heart rate data decreases battery life.

TIP: You can customize the activity settings to broadcast your heart rate data automatically when you begin an activity (*Activity Settings*, page 67). For example, you can broadcast your heart rate data to an Edge® bike computer while cycling.

Broadcasting heart rate data is not available for dive activities.

1. Select an option:
   - Hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Health & Wellness** > **Wrist Heart Rate** > **Broadcast Heart Rate**.
   - Hold •◯ to open the controls menu, and select ♥.

     NOTE: You can add options to the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).
2. Press ◯•.

   The watch starts broadcasting your heart rate data.
3. Pair your watch with your compatible device.

   NOTE: The pairing instructions differ for each Garmin® compatible device. See your owner's manual.
4. Press ◯• to stop broadcasting your heart rate data.

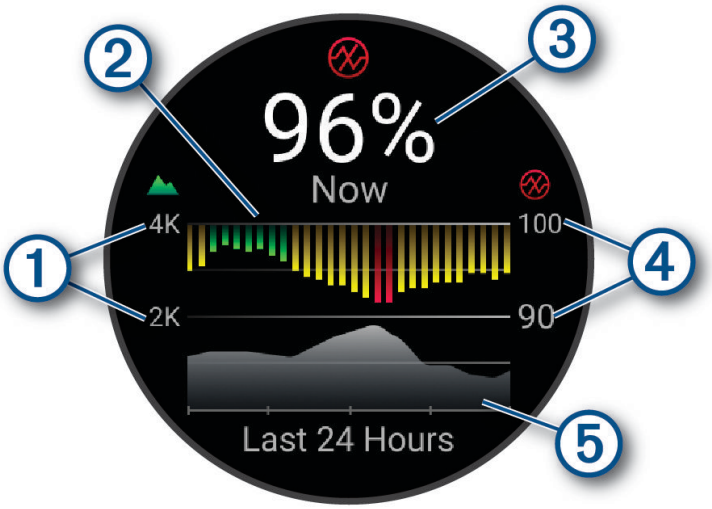
Pulse Oximeter

Your watch has a wrist-based pulse oximeter to gauge the peripheral saturation of oxygen in your blood (SpO2). As your altitude increases, the level of oxygen in your blood can decrease. Knowing your oxygen saturation can help you determine how your body is adjusting to high altitudes. During a flight, the watch automatically takes pulse oximeter readings more frequently, so you can monitor your SpO2 percentage (*Viewing Your SpO2 Readings in Flight*, page 36).

You can manually begin a pulse oximeter reading by viewing the pulse oximeter glance (*Getting Pulse Oximeter Readings*, page 127). You can also turn on all-day readings (*Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode*, page 127). When you view the pulse oximeter glance while you are not moving, your watch analyzes your oxygen saturation and your elevation. The elevation profile helps indicate how your pulse oximeter readings are changing, relative to your elevation.

On the watch, your pulse oximeter reading appears as an oxygen saturation percentage and color on the graph. On your Garmin Connect™ account, you can view additional details about your pulse oximeter readings, including trends over multiple days.

For more information about pulse oximeter accuracy, go to garmin.com/ataccuracy.



1	The elevation scale.
2	A graph of your average oxygen saturation readings for the last 24 hours.
3	Your most recent oxygen saturation reading.
4	The oxygen saturation percentage scale.
5	A graph of your elevation readings for the last 24 hours.

Getting Pulse Oximeter Readings

You can manually begin a pulse oximeter reading by viewing the pulse oximeter glance. The glance displays your most recent blood oxygen saturation percentage, a graph of your hourly average readings for the last 24 hours, and a graph of your elevation for the last 24 hours.

NOTE: The first time you view the pulse oximeter glance, the watch must acquire satellite signals to determine your elevation. You should go outside, and wait while the watch locates satellites.

1. While you are sitting or inactive, swipe up from the watch face.
2. Scroll to the pulse oximeter glance.
3. Select the pulse oximeter glance.
   The watch begins a pulse oximeter reading.
4. Remain motionless for up to 30 seconds.
   NOTE: If you are too active for the watch to get a pulse oximeter reading, a message appears instead of a percentage. You can check again after several minutes of inactivity. For best results, hold the arm wearing the watch at heart level while the watch reads your blood oxygen saturation.
5. Scroll down to view a graph of your pulse oximeter readings for the last seven days.

Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode

1. From the watch face, hold •.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Health & Wellness** > **Pulse Oximeter**.
3. Select an option:
   - To turn on measurements while you are inactive during the day, select **All Day**.
     NOTE: Turning on **All Day** mode decreases battery life.
   - To turn on continuous measurements while you sleep, select **During Sleep**.
     NOTE: Unusual sleep positions can cause abnormally low sleep-time SpO2 readings.
   - To turn off automatic measurements, select **On Demand**.

Tips for Erratic Pulse Oximeter Data

If the pulse oximeter data is erratic or does not appear, you can try these tips.

- Remain motionless while the watch reads your blood oxygen saturation.
- Wear the watch above your wrist bone. The watch should be snug but comfortable.

- Hold the arm wearing the watch at heart level while the watch reads your blood oxygen saturation.
- Use a silicone or nylon band.
- Clean and dry your arm before putting on the watch.
- Avoid wearing sunscreen, lotion, and insect repellent under the watch.
- Avoid scratching the optical sensor on the back of the watch.
- Rinse the watch with fresh water after each workout.

Auto Goal

Your device creates a daily step goal automatically, based on your previous activity levels. As you move during the day, the device shows your progress toward your daily goal.

If you choose not to use the auto goal feature, you can set a personalized step goal on your Garmin Connect™ account.

Intensity Minutes

To improve your health, organizations such as the World Health Organization recommend at least 150 minutes per week of moderate intensity activity, such as brisk walking, or 75 minutes per week of vigorous intensity activity, such as running.

The watch monitors your activity intensity and tracks your time spent participating in moderate to vigorous intensity activities (heart rate data is required to quantify vigorous intensity). The watch adds the amount of moderate activity minutes with the amount of vigorous activity minutes. Your total vigorous intensity minutes are doubled when added.

Earning Intensity Minutes

Your D2™ Mach 2 watch calculates intensity minutes by comparing your heart rate data to your average resting heart rate. If heart rate is turned off, the watch calculates moderate intensity minutes by analyzing your steps per minute.

- Start a timed activity for the most accurate calculation of intensity minutes.
- Wear your watch all day and night for the most accurate resting heart rate.

Sleep Tracking

While you are sleeping, the watch automatically detects your sleep and monitors your movement during your normal sleep hours. You can set your normal sleep hours in the Garmin Connect™ app or in the watch settings (*Customizing a Default Focus Mode*, page 123). Sleep statistics include total hours of sleep, sleep stages, sleep movement, and sleep score. Your sleep coach provides sleep need recommendations based on your sleep and activity history, circadian rhythm, HRV status, and naps (*Glances*, page 78). Naps are added to your sleep statistics, and can also impact your recovery. You can view detailed sleep statistics on your Garmin Connect account.

NOTE: You can use do not disturb mode to turn off notifications and alerts, with the exception of alarms (*Controls*, page 74).

Setting Your Sleep Schedule

Your watch uses your sleep schedule as a guide to accurately measure your sleep.

You can also use the Garmin Connect™ app to set your typical sleep hours.

1. From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **Focus Modes** > **Sleep** > **Schedule**.
3. Select the day range.
4. Select your bed and wake times.
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4 until your sleep schedule is set.

Using Automated Sleep Tracking

1. Wear your watch while sleeping.
2. Upload your sleep tracking data to your Garmin Connect™ account (*Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 119).

   You can view your sleep statistics on your Garmin Connect account.

   You can view sleep information, including naps, on your D2™ Mach 2 watch (*Glances*, page 78).

Breathing Variations

⚠ WARNING

The D2™ Mach 2 device is not a medical device and is not intended for use in the diagnosis or monitoring of any medical condition. For more information on pulse oximeter accuracy, go to garmin.com/ataccuracy.

The optical heart rate sensor on the D2 Mach 2 device has a pulse oximeter feature that can measure your overnight breathing variations. Breathing variation insights are provided to enhance awareness of your sleep environment and general wellness. Occasional or frequent breathing variations may be due to your individual lifestyle factors or your sleeping environment. Contact your doctor or healthcare provider if you're concerned about your level of breathing variations.

You must turn on pulse oximeter sleep tracking to detect breathing variations (*Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode*, page 127).

The sleep score glance displays your current breathing variations data.

You may need to add the glance to your glances list (*Customizing the Glances List*, page 81).

On your Garmin Connect™ account, you can view additional details about breathing variations, including trends over multiple days.

Map

Your watch can display several types of Garmin® map data, including topographical contours, nearby points of interest, ski maps, and golf courses. You can use the Map Manager to download additional maps or manage map storage.

To purchase additional map data and view compatibility information, go to garmin.com/maps.

represents your location on the map. When you are navigating to a destination, your route is marked with a line on the map.

Viewing the Map

1 Select an option to open the map:
   - Press , and select **Map** to view the map without starting an activity.
   - Go outside, start a GPS activity (*Starting an Activity*, page 32), and scroll to the map screen.
2 If necessary, wait while the watch locates satellites.
3 Select an option to zoom on the map:
   - In the **Map** app, select + or −.
   - In an activity, swipe down to unlock the touchscreen (if necessary), tap the map, and select + or −.
   - In an activity, hold , select **Map Controls**, and select + or −.
4 Select an option to pan the map:
   - Swipe down to unlock the touchscreen (if necessary), tap the map, and tap and drag to position the crosshairs.
   - In the **Map** app, select ≡ > **Pan/Zoom**, and press to toggle between panning up and down, panning left and right, or zooming. You can press to exit panning mode.
   - In an activity, hold , select **Map Controls** > ≡ > **Pan/Zoom**, and press to toggle between panning up and down, panning left and right, or zooming. You can press to exit panning mode.

Saving or Navigating to a Location on the Map

You can select any location on the map. You can save the location or start navigating to it.

1 Pan and zoom the map to position the crosshairs (*Viewing the Map*, page 130).
2 Select an option:
   - Tap the location or coordinates at the bottom of the screen to select the point indicated by the crosshairs.
   - Hold to select the point indicated by the crosshairs.
3 If necessary, select a nearby point of interest.
4 Select an option:
   - To start navigating to the location, select **Go**.
   - To save the location, select **Save Location**.
   - To view information about the location, select **Review**.

Tracking Your Location on the Map

You can track your location on the map and start a tracking activity.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Map**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Start Tracking**.
   The activity timer starts, and your location and track line appear on the map.
5 Press , and select **Stop Tracking** to stop the activity timer (*Stopping an Activity*, page 33).

Map Settings

You can customize how the map appears in the map app and data screens.

NOTE: If necessary, you can customize the map settings for specific activities instead of using the system settings (*Activity Settings*, page 67).

From the watch face, hold , and select **Watch Settings > Map & Navigation**.

Map Manager: Shows the downloaded map versions and allows you to download additional maps (*Managing Maps*, page 131).

Aviation Map Settings: Sets the ownship aircraft type, and enables METAR and airspace information on the map.

Dark Mode: Sets the map colors to either a white or black background for daytime or nighttime visibility. The Auto option adjusts the map colors based on the time of day.

Marine Chart Mode: Enables the nautical chart when displaying marine data. This option displays various map features in different colors so the marine data is more readable and the map reflects the drawing scheme of paper charts.

High Contrast: Sets the map to display data with higher contrast, for better visibility in challenging environments.

Orientation: Sets the orientation of the map. The North Up option shows north at the top of the screen. The Track Up option shows your current direction of travel at the top of the screen.

Lock on Road: Locks the position icon, which represents your position on the map, onto the nearest road.

Detail: Sets the amount of detail shown on the map. Showing more detail may cause the map to redraw more slowly.

Symbol Set: Sets the chart symbols in marine mode. The NOAA option displays the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA®) chart symbols. The International option displays the International Association of Lighthouse Authorities chart symbols.

Managing Maps

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Map & Navigation** > **Map Manager**.
3 Select an option:
   - To download premium maps and activate your Outdoor Maps+ subscription for this device, select **Outdoor Maps+** (*Downloading Maps with Outdoor Maps+*, page 131).
   - To download TopoActive maps, select **TopoActive Maps** (*Downloading TopoActive Maps*, page 132).

Downloading Maps with Outdoor Maps+

Before you can download maps to your device, you must connect to a wireless network (*Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network*, page 113).

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Map & Navigation** > **Map Manager** > **Outdoor Maps+**.
3 If necessary, press •, and select **Check Subscription** to activate your Outdoor Maps+ subscription for this watch.

   NOTE: Go to garmin.com/outdoormaps for information about purchasing a subscription.
4 Select **Add Map**, and select a location.

   A preview of the map region appears.
5 From the map, complete one or more actions:
   - Drag the map to view different areas.
   - Pinch or spread two fingers on the touchscreen to zoom in and out of the map.
   - Select ✚ and ━ to zoom in and out of the map.
6 Press •, and select ✔.
7 Select ✎.
8 Select an option:
   - To edit the map name, select **Name**.
   - To change the map layers to download, select **Layers**.

     TIP: You can select ⓘ to view details about the map layers.
   - To modify the map region, select **Selected Area**.
9 Select ✔ to download the map.

   NOTE: To prevent battery drain, the watch queues the map download for later, and the download starts when you connect the watch to an external power source.

Downloading TopoActive Maps

Before you can download maps to your device, you must connect to a wireless network (*Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network*, page 113).

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Map & Navigation** > **Map Manager** > **TopoActive Maps** > **Add Map**.
3 Select a map.
4 Press , and select **Download**.

NOTE: To prevent battery drain, the watch queues the map download for later, and the download starts when you connect the watch to an external power source.

Deleting Maps

You can remove maps to increase the available device storage.

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Map & Navigation** > **Map Manager**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **TopoActive Maps**, select a map, press , and select **Remove**.
   - Select **Outdoor Maps+**, select a map, press , and select **Delete**.

Showing and Hiding Map Data

You can choose the map data to show on the map and save map data themes for multiple activities.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Map**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Map Layers**.
5 Select an option:
   - To customize the map data for an activity type, select **Activity Theme**, and select an activity.
     Changes you make to the map data settings are saved to the selected activity theme.
   - To select the installed map product to display, select **Map Type**, and select a map product.
   - To turn on specific map features, such as activity lines or saved locations, select the map feature, and select **Status** > **On**.
     TIP: You can select **Apply to all Activities** to apply the setting to all activity themes.
   - To view your downloaded map versions or download additional maps, select **Get More Maps** (*Managing Maps*, page 131).

Navigation

Navigating to a Destination

You can use your device to navigate to a destination or follow a course.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Map**.
3. Press .
4. Select **Navigate**.
5. Select a category.
6. Respond to the on-screen prompts to choose a destination.
   Navigation information appears.
7. Select **Go To**.
8. Press to begin navigation.

Navigating to a Nearby Point of Interest

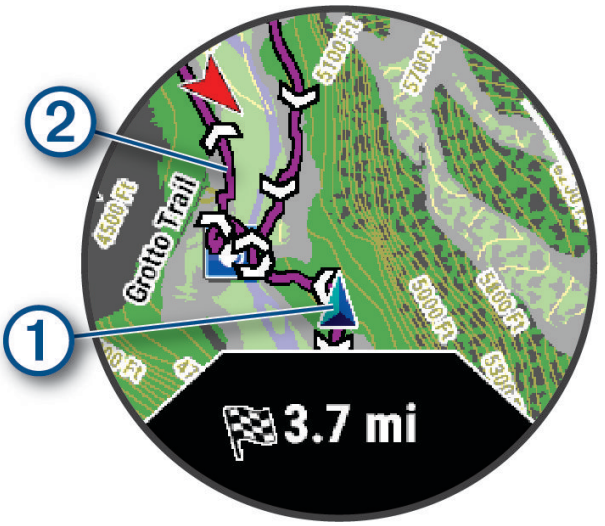
If the map data installed on your watch includes points of interest, you can navigate to them.

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Map**.
3. Press .
4. Select **Navigate** > **Explore Nearby**.
   A list of points of interest near your current location appears.
5. Select an option:
   - Select a category and, if necessary, follow the on-screen prompts.
   - Press to open the keyboard, and enter a location name.
   - Select to open the keyboard, and enter a location name.
6. Select a point of interest from the search results.
7. Select **Go To**.
8. Select the activity you want to use while following the course.
   Navigation information appears.
9. Press to begin navigation.

Navigating to Your Starting Point During an Activity

You can navigate back to the starting point of your current activity in a straight line or along the path you traveled. This feature is available only for activities that use GPS.

1. During an activity, press .
2. Select **Back to Start**, and select an option:
   - To navigate back to the starting point of your activity along the path you traveled, select **TracBack**.
   - If you do not have a supported map or are using direct routing, select **Route** to navigate back to the starting point of your activity in a straight line.
   - If you are not using direct routing, select **Route** to navigate back to the starting point of your activity using turn-by-turn directions.



Your current location ① and the track to follow ② appear on the map.

Marking and Starting Navigation to a Man Overboard Location

You can mark a man overboard (MOB) location, and automatically start navigation back to it.

1 Customize a button or button combination for the **Man Overboard** feature (*Customizing the Button Shortcuts*, page 148).
2 Hold the button or button combination you customized for the **Man Overboard** feature.
Navigation information appears.

Stopping Navigation

1 While navigating during an activity, select an option:
- Hold •.
- Swipe right.

2 Scroll down and select **Stop Navigation** or **Stop Course**.
3 Select ✔

Navigation to your destination stops, but your activity remains active. You can press to return to the activity timer.

Saving Locations

Saving Your Location

You can save your current location to navigate back to it later from the Saved app (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).

NOTE: You can add options to the controls menu (*Customizing the Controls Menu*, page 76).

1 Hold •.
2 Select .
3 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Saving a Dual Grid Location

You can save your current location using dual grid coordinates to navigate back to the same location later.

1 Customize a button or button combination for the **Dual Grid** feature (*Customizing the Button Shortcuts*, page 148).
2 Hold the button or button combination you customized to save a dual grid location.
3 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
4 Press • to save the location.
You can edit the location details.

Sharing a Location From a Map Using the Garmin Connect™ App

NOTICE

It is your responsibility to use discretion when sharing location information with others. Always ensure you are aware of and comfortable with the individual with whom you share location information.

NOTE: This feature is available only if your course-compatible Garmin® device is connected to an iPhone® device using Bluetooth® technology.

You can share location information and data from Apple® Maps to your compatible Garmin device.

1 From Apple Maps, select a location.
2 Select ⬆ > .
3 If necessary, from the Garmin Connect app, select the Garmin device.
   A notification appears in the Garmin Connect app indicating that the location in now available on your device (*Starting a GPS Activity From a Shared Location*, page 135).

Starting a GPS Activity From a Shared Location

You can use the Garmin Connect™ app to share a location from Apple® Maps to your watch, and navigate to that location (*Sharing a Location From a Map Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 135).

1 When you receive the location notification on your watch, select ✔.
   Your watch displays location information.
   TIP: The location is saved in the Saved app (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).
2 Select **Go To**, and choose an activity.
3 Follow the on-screen instructions to proceed to your destination.

Navigating to a Shared Location During an Activity

This feature is designed for activities using GPS. If GPS is turned off for your activity, you can view the location later.

TIP: The location is saved in the Saved app (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).

You can receive shared locations on your watch during a GPS activity and navigate to those locations (*Sharing a Location From a Map Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 135).

1 If a shared location notification appears during a GPS activity, select ✔ to navigate to the shared location.
2 Follow the on-screen instructions to proceed to your destination.

Courses

⚠ WARNING

This feature allows users to download courses created by other users. Garmin® makes no representations about the safety, accuracy, reliability, completeness, or timeliness of courses created by third parties. Any use or reliance on courses created by third parties is at your own risk.

You can send a course from your Garmin Connect™ account to your device. After it is saved to your device, you can navigate the course on your device.

You can follow a saved course simply because it is a good route. For example, you can save and follow a bike friendly commute to work.

You can also follow a saved course, trying to match or exceed previously set performance goals. For example, if the original course was completed in 30 minutes, you can race against a Virtual Partner® trying to complete the course in under 30 minutes.

Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™

Before you can create a course on the Garmin Connect app, you must have a Garmin Connect account (*Garmin Connect™*, page 118).

1 From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Courses** > **Create Course**.
3 Select a course type.
4 Follow the on-screen instructions.
5 Select **Done**.
   NOTE: You can send this course to your device (*Sending a Course to Your Device*, page 136).

Sending a Course to Your Device

You can send a course you created using the Garmin Connect™ app to your device (*Creating a Course on Garmin Connect™, page 135*).

1 From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2 Select **Training & Planning** > **Courses**.
3 Select a course.
4 Select .
5 Select your compatible device.
6 Follow the on-screen instructions.

Creating and Following a Course on Your Watch

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Map**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Navigate** > **Create a Course**.
5 Enter a name using the keyboard.
6 Follow the on-screen prompts to add locations.
7 Select **Done** to save the course.
   Navigation information appears.
8 Select **Do Course**.

Creating a Round-Trip Course

The watch can create a round-trip course based on a specified distance and direction of navigation.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Map**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Navigate** > **Round-Trip Course**.
5 Select the activity you want to use while following the course.
6 Enter the total distance for the course.
7 Select a direction heading.
   The watch creates up to three courses. You can press to view the courses.
8 Press to select a course.
9 Select an option:
   - To begin navigation, select **Go**.
   - To view the course on the map and pan or zoom the map, select **Map**.
   - To view a list of turns in the course, select **Turn By Turn**.
   - To view an elevation plot of the course, select **Elevation**.
   - To save the course, select **Save**.
   - To view a list of ascents in the course, select **View Climbs**.

Navigating with Sight 'N Go

You can point the device at an object in the distance, such as a water tower, lock in the direction, and then navigate to the object.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Map**.
3 Press .
4 Select **Navigate** > **Sight 'N Go**.
5 Point the top of the watch at an object, and press .
   Navigation information appears and tracking begins.

Following a Saved Course on Your Watch

After you save or send a course to your watch, you can follow the course during an outdoor activity.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Activities**.
3 Select a GPS activity.
4 Scroll down, and select **Navigate** > **Saved**.
5 Select a saved course.
6 Select **More** to view the course details and settings (optional) (*Using the Saved App*, page 15).
7 Select **Do Course**.
8 Press to begin navigation and start the activity timer.

Setting the Compass Heading

1 Select an option:
   - From the watch face, scroll to view and open the compass glance.
   - From the watch face, scroll to view and open the ABC glance, and scroll to view the compass.
   - Hold , and select the compass control.
   - Hold , select the ABC control, and scroll to view the compass.
2 Press to view options.
3 Select **Lock Heading**.
4 Point the top of the watch toward your heading, and press .
   When you deviate from the heading, the compass displays the direction from the heading and degree of deviation.

Setting a Reference Point

You can set a reference point to provide the heading and distance to a location or bearing.

1 Select an option:
   - Hold .
     TIP: You can set a reference point while you are recording an activity.
   - From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Reference Point**.
3 Wait while the watch locates satellites.
4 Press , and select **Add Point**.
5 Select a location or bearing to use as a reference point for navigation.
   The compass arrow and distance to your destination appear.
6 Point the top of the watch toward your heading.
   When you deviate from the heading, the compass displays the direction from the heading and degree of deviation.
7 If necessary, press , and select **Change Point** to set a different reference point.

Projecting a Waypoint

You can create a new location by projecting the distance and bearing from your current location to a new location.

NOTE: You may need to add the Project Wpt. app to the activities and apps list.

1 From the watch face, press .
2 Select **Project Wpt.**.
3 Press or to set the heading.
4 Press .
5 Press to select a unit of measure.
6 Press to enter the distance.
7 Press to save.

The projected waypoint is saved with a default name.

Safety and Tracking Features

⚠ CAUTION

The safety and tracking features available through the Garmin Connect™ app are supplemental features and should not be relied on as a primary method to obtain emergency assistance. The Garmin Connect app does not contact emergency services on your behalf.

NOTICE

To use the safety and tracking features, the D2™ Mach 2 or D2 Mach 2 Pro watch without an inReach® service plan must be connected to the Garmin Connect app using Bluetooth® technology. The D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan can use the LTE network. Your paired phone must be equipped with a data plan and be in an area of network coverage where data is available. You can enter assistance contacts in your Garmin Connect account.

For more information about safety and tracking features, go to garmin.com/safety.

Assistance: When you request assistance, the watch sends a message with your name, LiveTrack link, and GPS location (if available) to your assistance contacts (*Requesting Assistance*, page 139).

GroupTrack: Keeps track of your connections using LiveTrack directly on screen and in real time (*Starting a GroupTrack Session*, page 139).

Incident Detection: When the D2 Mach 2 watch detects an incident during certain outdoor activities, the watch sends an automated message with a LiveTrack link and GPS location (if available) to your assistance contacts (*Turning Incident Detection On and Off*, page 138).

Live Event Sharing: Sends messages to friends and family during an event, providing real-time updates.

NOTE: This feature is available only if your watch is connected to a compatible Android™ phone.

LiveTrack: Sends a web page link to friends and family to follow your races and training activities in real time. You can use the Garmin Connect app to invite followers using email or social media, allowing them to view your live data.

Adding Assistance Contacts

Assistance contact phone numbers are used for the safety and tracking features.

1. From the Garmin Connect™ app, select •••.
2. Select **Safety & Tracking** > **Safety Features** > **Assistance Contacts** > **Add Assistance Contact**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Your assistance contacts receive a notification when you add them as an assistance contact, and can accept or decline your request. If a contact declines, you must choose another assistance contact.

Adding Contacts

You can add up to 50 contacts to the Garmin Connect™ app. Contact emails can be used with the LiveTrack feature. Three of these contacts can be used as assistance contacts (*Adding Assistance Contacts*, page 138).

1. From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

After you add contacts, you must sync your data to apply the changes to your D2™ Mach 2 device (*Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 119).

Turning Incident Detection On and Off

⚠ CAUTION

Incident detection is a supplemental feature available only for certain outdoor activities. Incident detection should not be relied on as a primary method to obtain emergency assistance. The Garmin Connect™ app does not contact emergency services on your behalf.

NOTICE

Before you can enable incident detection on your watch, you must set up assistance contacts in the Garmin Connect app (*Adding Assistance Contacts*, page 138). Your paired phone or D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan must be in an area of network coverage where data is available. Your assistance contacts must be able to receive emails or text messages (standard text messaging rates may apply).

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.

2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Safety & Tracking** > **Incident Detection**.
3 Select a GPS activity.
   NOTE: Incident detection is available only for certain outdoor activities.

When an incident is detected by your D2 Mach 2 watch and your phone is connected, the Garmin Connect app can send an automated text message and email with your name and GPS location (if available) to your assistance contacts. A message appears on your device and paired phone indicating your contacts will be informed after 15 seconds have elapsed. If assistance is not needed, you can cancel the automated message. If you have a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, incident detection can be enabled for activities without your phone.

Requesting Assistance

⚠ CAUTION

Assistance is a supplemental feature and should not be relied upon as a primary method to obtain emergency assistance. The Garmin Connect™ app does not contact emergency services on your behalf.

NOTICE

Before you can request assistance, you must set up assistance contacts in the Garmin Connect app (*Adding Assistance Contacts*, page 138). If your watch is not a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, your paired phone must be equipped with a data plan and be in an area of network coverage where data is available. Your assistance contacts must be able to receive emails or text messages (standard text messaging rates may apply).

1 Select an option:
   - On a D2 Mach 2 or D2 Mach 2 Pro watch without an inReach service plan, hold ⌚ for five seconds.
   - On a D2 Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach service plan, hold ⌚, and select **Assistance**.

   The watch vibrates when the assistance feature is activated.
2 Wait for the countdown timer.
   The watch sends a message to your assistance contacts.
   TIP: Before the countdown is complete, you can hold any button to cancel the message.

Spectator Messaging

NOTICE

Spectator messaging is available when your D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch has an active inReach® service plan or when your paired phone has a data plan and is in an area of network coverage where data is available.

Spectator messaging is a feature that allows your LiveTrack followers to send you audio and text messages during your run activity. You can set up this feature in the LiveTrack settings of the Garmin Connect™ app.

Blocking Spectator Messages

If you want to block spectator messages, Garmin® recommends turning it off before you start the activity.

1 From the watch face, hold ⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Safety & Tracking** > **LiveTrack** > **Spectator Messaging**.
   TIP: If you have already started an activity, you can press ⌚, and select Disable to block spectator messages from the incoming message.

Starting a GroupTrack Session

NOTICE

If your watch is not a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, your paired phone must be equipped with a data plan and be in an area of network coverage where data is available.

Before you can start a GroupTrack session, you must pair the watch with a compatible phone (*Pairing Your Phone*, page 110).

These instructions are for starting a GroupTrack session with a D2 Mach 2 watch. If your connections have other compatible devices, you can see them on the map. The other devices may not be able to display GroupTrack riders on the map.

1 From the watch face, hold ⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Safety & Tracking** > **LiveTrack** > **GroupTrack**.

3 Select an option:
   - Select **Visible To** to enable GroupTrack sessions for all of your Garmin Connect™ connections or only invited connections.
   - Select **Show on Map** to enable viewing connections on the map screen
   - Select **Activity Types** to select which activity types appear on the map screen during a GroupTrack session.
4 On the watch, start an outdoor activity.
5 Scroll to the map to view your connections.

Tips for GroupTrack Sessions

The GroupTrack feature allows you to keep track of other connections in your group using LiveTrack directly on the screen. All members of the group must be your connections in your Garmin Connect™ account.

- Start your activity outside using GPS.
- Pair your D2™ Mach 2 device with your phone using Bluetooth® technology.
- In the Garmin Connect app, select ••• > **Connections** to update the list of connections for your GroupTrack session.
- Make sure all of your connections pair with their phones and start a LiveTrack session in the Garmin Connect app.
- Make sure all your connections are in range (40 km or 25 mi.).
- During a GroupTrack session, scroll to the map to view your connections (*Adding the Map Data Screen*, page 67).

Music

NOTE: There are three different music playback options for your D2™ Mach 2 watch.

- Third-party provider music
- Personal audio content
- Music stored on your phone

On a D2 Mach 2 watch, you can download audio content to your watch from your computer or from a third-party provider, so you can listen when your phone is not nearby. To listen to audio content stored on your watch, you can connect Bluetooth® headphones. You can also listen to audio content directly through the speaker in your watch.

Connecting to a Third-Party Provider

Before you can download music or other audio files to your watch from a supported third-party provider, you must connect the provider to your watch.

For more options, you can download the Connect IQ™ app on your phone (*Downloading Connect IQ™ Features*, page 120).

1. From the watch face, press .
2. Select **Connect IQ Store**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to install a third-party music provider.
4. Hold from any screen to open the music controls.
5. Select the music provider.

   NOTE: If you want to select another provider, hold , select **Watch Settings** > **Music** > **Music Providers**, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Downloading Audio Content from a Third-Party Provider

Before you can download audio content from a third-party provider, you must connect to a Wi-Fi® network (*Connecting to a Wi-Fi® Network*, page 113).

1. Hold from any screen to open the music controls.
2. Hold .
3. Select **Music Providers**.
4. Select a connected provider, or select **Add Music Apps** to add a music provider from the Connect IQ™ store.
5. Select a playlist or other item to download to the watch.
6. If necessary, press until you are prompted to sync with the service.

NOTE: Downloading audio content can drain the battery. You may be required to connect the watch to an external power source if the battery is low.

Downloading Personal Audio Content

Before you can send your personal music to your watch, you must install the Garmin Express™ application on your computer (garmin.com/express).

You can load your personal audio files, such as .mp3 and .m4a files, to a D2™ Mach 2 watch from your computer. For more information, go to garmin.com/musicfiles.

1. Connect the watch to your computer using the included USB cable.
2. On your computer, open the Garmin Express application, select your watch, and select **Music**.

   TIP: For Windows® computers, you can select and browse to the folder with your audio files. For Apple® computers, the Garmin Express application uses your iTunes® library.
3. In the **My Music** or **iTunes Library** list, select an audio file category, such as songs or playlists.
4. Select the checkboxes for the audio files, and select **Send to Device**.
5. If necessary, in the D2 Mach 2 list, select a category, select the checkboxes, and select **Remove From Device** to remove audio files.

Listening to Music

1. Hold from any screen to open the music controls.
2. Hold .

3 Select an option:
   - If this is your first time listening to music, select **Settings** > **Music** > **Music Providers**.
   - If this is not your first time listening to music, select **Music Providers**.
4 Select an option:
   - To listen to music downloaded to the watch from your computer, select **My Music**, and select an option (*Downloading Personal Audio Content*, page 141).
   - To listen to music from a third-party provider, select the name of the provider, and select a playlist.
   - To control music playback on your phone, select **Control Phone**.
5 If necessary, connect your Bluetooth® headphones (*Connecting Bluetooth® Headphones*, page 142).
6 Select ▶.

Music Playback Controls

During an activity, you can swipe left to view the music playback controls. You can also hold to open the music controls.

NOTE: Music playback controls may look different, depending on the selected music source.

⋮	Select to view more music playback controls.
♫	Select to browse the audio files and playlists for the selected source.
🔊	Select to adjust the volume.
▶	Select to play and pause the current audio file.
▶|	Select to skip to the next audio file in the playlist. Hold to fast forward through the current audio file.
|◀	Select to restart the current audio file. Select twice to skip to the previous audio file in the playlist. Hold to rewind through the current audio file.
⟲	Select to change the repeat mode.
⤮	Select to change the shuffle mode.

Connecting Bluetooth® Headphones

1 Bring the headphones within 2 m (6.6 ft.) of your watch.
2 Enable pairing mode on the headphones.
3 From the watch face, hold •.
4 Select **Watch Settings** > **Music** > **Audio Output** > **Add New**.
5 Select your headphones to complete the pairing process.

Changing the Audio Mode

You can change the music playback mode from stereo to mono.

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Music** > **Audio**.
3 Select an option.

User Profile

You can update your user profile on your watch or on the Garmin Connect™ app.

Setting Up Your User Profile

You can update your personal information, such as height, weight, training zones, and more. The watch uses this information to calculate accurate training data.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **User Profile**.
3 Select an option.

Gender Settings

When you first set up the watch, you must choose a sex. Most fitness and training algorithms are binary. For the most accurate results, Garmin® recommends selecting your sex assigned at birth. After the initial setup, you can customize the profile settings in your Garmin Connect™ account.

Profile & Privacy: Enables you to customize the data on your public profile.

User Settings: Sets your sex. If you select Not Specified, the algorithms that require a binary input will use the sex you specified when you first set up the watch.

Viewing Your Fitness Age

Your fitness age gives you an idea of how your fitness compares with a person of the same sex. Your watch uses information, such as your age, body mass index (BMI), resting heart rate data, and vigorous activity history to provide a fitness age. If you have an Index™ scale, your watch uses the body fat percentage metric instead of BMI to determine your fitness age. Exercise and lifestyle changes can impact your fitness age.

NOTE: For the most accurate fitness age, complete the user profile setup (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143).

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **User Profile** > **Fitness Age**.

About Heart Rate Zones

Many athletes use heart rate zones to measure and increase their cardiovascular strength and improve their level of fitness. A heart rate zone is a set range of heartbeats per minute. The five commonly accepted heart rate zones are numbered from 1 to 5 according to increasing intensity. Generally, heart rate zones are calculated based on percentages of your maximum heart rate.

Fitness Goals

Knowing your heart rate zones can help you measure and improve your fitness by understanding and applying these principles.

- Your heart rate is a good measure of exercise intensity.
- Training in certain heart rate zones can help you improve cardiovascular capacity and strength.

If you know your maximum heart rate, you can use the table (*Heart Rate Zone Calculations*, page 144) to determine the best heart rate zone for your fitness objectives.

If you do not know your maximum heart rate, use one of the calculators available on the Internet. Some gyms and health centers can provide a test that measures maximum heart rate. The default maximum heart rate is 220 minus your age.

Setting Your Heart Rate Zones

The watch uses your user profile information from the initial setup to determine your default heart rate zones. You can set separate heart rate zones for sport profiles, such as running, cycling, and swimming. For the most accurate calorie data during your activity, set your maximum heart rate. You can also set each heart rate zone and enter your resting heart rate manually. You can manually adjust your zones on the watch or using your Garmin Connect™ account.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **User Profile** > **Heart Rate & Power Zones** > **Heart Rate**.
3 Select **Max. Heart Rate**, and enter your maximum heart rate.

   You can use the Auto Detection feature to automatically record your maximum heart rate during an activity (*Detecting Performance Measurements Automatically*, page 145).

4 Select **LTHR**, and enter your lactate threshold heart rate (*Lactate Threshold*, page 84).

   You can use the Auto Detection feature to automatically record your lactate threshold during an activity (*Detecting Performance Measurements Automatically*, page 145).

5 Select **Resting HR** > **Set Custom**, and enter your resting heart rate.

   You can use the average resting heart rate measured by your watch, or you can set a custom resting heart rate.

6 Select **Zones** > **Based On**.

7 Select an option:
   - Select **BPM** to view and edit the zones in beats per minute.
   - Select **%Max. HR** to view and edit the zones as a percentage of your maximum heart rate.
   - Select **%HRR** to view and edit the zones as a percentage of your heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate).
   - Select **%LTHR** to view and edit the zones as a percentage of your lactate threshold heart rate.

8 Select a zone, and enter a value for each zone.

9 Select **Sport Heart Rate**, and select a sport profile to add separate heart rate zones (optional).

10 Repeat the steps to add sport heart rate zones (optional).

Letting the Watch Set Your Heart Rate Zones

The default settings allow the watch to detect your maximum heart rate and set your heart rate zones as a percentage of your maximum heart rate.

- Verify that your user profile settings are accurate (*Setting Up Your User Profile*, page 143).
- Run often with the wrist or chest heart rate monitor.
- View your heart rate trends and time in zones using your Garmin Connect™ account.

Heart Rate Zone Calculations

Zone	% of Maximum Heart Rate	Perceived Exertion	Benefits
1	50–60%	Relaxed, easy pace, rhythmic breathing	Beginning-level aerobic training, reduces stress
2	60–70%	Comfortable pace, slightly deeper breathing, conversation possible	Basic cardiovascular training, good recovery pace
3	70–80%	Moderate pace, more difficult to hold conversation	Improved aerobic capacity, optimal cardiovascular training
4	80–90%	Fast pace and a bit uncomfortable, breathing forceful	Improved anaerobic capacity and threshold, improved speed
5	90–100%	Sprinting pace, unsustainable for long period of time, labored breathing	Anaerobic and muscular endurance, increased power

Setting Your Power Zones

The power zones use default values based on gender, weight, and average ability, and may not match your personal abilities. If you know your functional threshold power (FTP) or threshold power (TP) value, you can enter it and allow the software to calculate your power zones automatically. You can manually adjust your zones on the watch or using your Garmin Connect™ account.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.

2 Select **Watch Settings** > **User Profile** > **Heart Rate & Power Zones** > **Power**.

3 Select an activity.

4 Select **Based On**.

5 Select an option:
   - Select **Watts** to view and edit the zones in watts.
   - Select **% of FTP** or **% of TP** to view and edit the zones as a percentage of your threshold power.

6 Select **FTP** or **Threshold Power**, and enter your value.

   You can use the Auto Detection feature to automatically record your threshold power during an activity (*Detecting Performance Measurements Automatically*, page 145).

7 Select a zone, and enter a value for each zone.

8 If necessary, select **Minimum**, and enter a minimum power value.

Detecting Performance Measurements Automatically

The Auto Detection feature is turned on by default. The watch can automatically detect your maximum heart rate and lactate threshold during an activity. When paired with a compatible power meter, the watch can automatically detect your functional threshold power (FTP) during an activity.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **User Profile** > **Heart Rate & Power Zones** > **Auto Detection**.
3 Select an option.

Power Manager Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Power Manager**.

Battery Saver: Customizes system settings to extend battery life in watch mode (*Customizing the Battery Saver Feature*, page 146).

Activity Power Modes: Customizes system settings to extend battery life during an activity (*Customizing Power Modes*, page 146).

Battery Percentage: Displays remaining battery life as a percentage.

Battery Estimates: Displays remaining battery life as an estimated number of days or hours.

Low Battery Alert: Notifies you when the battery level is low.

Customizing the Battery Saver Feature

The battery saver feature allows you to quickly adjust system settings to extend battery life in watch mode.

You can turn on the battery saver feature from the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74).

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Power Manager** > **Battery Saver**.
3 Select **Status** to turn on the battery saver feature.
4 Select **Edit**, and select an option:
   - Select **Watch Face** to enable a low-power watch face that updates once per minute.
   - Select **Music** to disable listening to music from your watch.
   - Select **Phone** to disconnect your paired phone.
   - Select **Wi-Fi** to disconnect from a Wi-Fi® network.
   - On a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch, select **LTE** to disconnect from the LTE network.
   - Select **Wrist Heart Rate** to turn off the wrist heart rate monitor.
   - Select **Pulse Oximeter** to turn off the pulse oximeter sensor.
   - Select **Always On Display** to turn off the screen when not in use.
   - Select **Brightness** to reduce the screen brightness.
   - Select **Wake Word** to disable the wake word for voice commands.
   - Select **Wake On Alert** to prevent the screen from turning on when you receive a notification or alert.
   - Select **Wake On Gesture** to prevent the screen from turning on when you raise and turn your arm to look at your wrist.

   The watch displays the hours of battery life gained with each setting change.
5 Select **Low Battery Alert** to receive an alert when the battery level is low.

Customizing Power Modes

Your device comes preloaded with several power modes, allowing you to quickly adjust system settings, activity settings, and GPS settings to extend battery life during an activity. You can customize existing power modes and create new custom power modes.

1 From the watch face, hold •◯.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Power Manager** > **Activity Power Modes**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select a power mode to customize.
   - Select **Add New** to create a custom power mode.
4 If necessary, enter a custom name.
5 Select an option to customize specific power mode settings.

   For example, you can change the satellite setting or disconnect your paired phone. You can select Restore to reset the power mode back to the default settings.

   The watch displays the hours of battery life gained with each setting change.
6 If necessary, select **Done** to save and use the custom power mode.

Accessibility Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **Accessibility**.

Spoken Watch Face: Enables your watch to speak data from your watch face. You can select the Time and Date Only or Entire Watch Face options.

Color Filters: Sets the color mode for all screens, increasing color visibility for colorblindness. You can remove specific colors such as red, green, or blue, or select Grayscale to remove all color.

Hourly Alert: Enables an alert at the start of each hour. You can set this alert as a watch tone or vibration, spoken time of day, or any combination.

Voice Command: Sets the voice command language and enables the OK Garmin watch wake word for voice commands (*Using Voice Commands*, page 16).

Phone Assistant: Enables your phone's voice assistant wake word for voice commands (*Using the Phone Assistant*, page 110).

System Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **System**.

Language: Sets the language displayed on the watch (*My watch is in the wrong language*, page 157).

Shortcuts: Assigns shortcuts to buttons (*Customizing the Button Shortcuts*, page 148).

Passcode: Sets a four-digit passcode to secure your personal information when the watch is not on your wrist (*Setting Your Watch Passcode*, page 148).

Do Not Disturb: Enables do not disturb mode to dim the screen and disable alerts and notifications.

Night Vision: Enables night vision mode for compatibility with night vision goggles and customizes the mode settings for the notifications (*Notifications and Alerts Settings*, page 101), sounds (*Sound and Vibration Settings*, page 104), and display (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).

Compass: Calibrates the internal compass and customizes the settings (*Compass*, page 149).

Altimeter & Barometer: Calibrates the internal barometric altimeter and customizes the settings (*Altimeter and Barometer*, page 149).

Depth Sensor: Customizes the depth sensor settings (*Depth Sensor*, page 150).

Time: Adjusts the time settings (*Time Settings*, page 150).

Keyboard: Sets the default watch keyboard language and format. You can add more keyboard options and change your default keyboard (*Changing the Default Watch Keyboard*, page 151).

Voice: Sets the watch voice dialect and voice type, your dialect for voice controls, and enables wake words for your watch or phone voice assistant (*Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch*, page 151). You can also set voice alerts during an activity (*Playing Voice Alerts During an Activity*, page 71).

Advanced: Opens the advanced system settings for setting the units of measure, data recording mode, and USB mode (*Advanced System Settings*, page 151).

Restore & Reset: Configures watch data backups and resets user data and settings (*Restore and Reset Settings*, page 151).

Software Update: Installs downloaded software updates, enables automatic updates, and allows you to manually check for updates (*Product Updates*, page 157).

About: Displays device, software, license, and regulatory information (*Viewing Device Information*, page 152).

Customizing the Button Shortcuts

You can customize the hold function of individual buttons and combinations of buttons.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Shortcuts**.
3. Select a button or combination of buttons to customize.
4. Select a function.

Setting Your Watch Passcode

NOTICE

If you enter your passcode incorrectly three times, the watch locks temporarily. After five incorrect attempts, the watch locks until you reset your passcode in the Garmin Connect™ app. If you have not paired your watch with your phone, the watch deletes your data and resets to the factory default settings after five incorrect attempts.

You can set up a watch passcode to secure your personal information when the watch is not on your wrist. If you are using the Garmin Pay™ feature, the watch uses the same four-digit passcode required to open your wallet (*Garmin Pay™*, page 19).

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Passcode** > **Set Passcode**.
3. Enter a four-digit passcode.

The next time you remove the watch from your wrist, you must enter the passcode before you can view any information.

Changing Your Watch Passcode

You must know your existing watch passcode to change it. If you forget your passcode or make too many incorrect passcode attempts, you must reset it in the Garmin Connect™ app.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.

2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Passcode** > **Change Passcode**.
3 Enter your existing four-digit passcode.
4 Enter a new four-digit passcode.

The next time you remove the watch from your wrist, you must enter the passcode before you can view any information.

Turning Off Your Watch Passcode

NOTE: You must know your existing device passcode to turn it off. If you forget your passcode or make too many incorrect passcode attempts, you must reset it in the Garmin Connect™ app.

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Passcode** > **Passcode** > **Off**.
3 Enter your existing four-digit passcode.

The watch turns off the passcode option.

Compass

The watch has a 3-axis compass with automatic calibration. The compass features and appearance change depending on your activity, whether GPS is enabled, and whether you are navigating to a destination. You can change the compass settings manually (*Compass Settings*, page 149). You can view the compass from the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74), glances list (*Glances*, page 78), or a data screen during an activity (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

Compass Settings

From the watch face, hold •, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Compass**.

Calibrate: Manually calibrates the compass sensor (*Calibrating the Compass Manually*, page 149).

Display: Sets the directional heading on the compass to letters, degrees, or milliradians.

North Ref.: Sets the north reference of the compass (*Setting the North Reference*, page 149).

Mag. Variation: Sets the magnetometer variation for the north reference if the **North Ref.** option is set to **User**.

Mode: Sets the compass to use a combination of GPS and electronic-sensor data when moving (Auto), GPS data only, or the magnetometer.

Calibrating the Compass Manually

NOTICE

Calibrate the electronic compass outdoors. To improve heading accuracy, do not stand near objects that influence magnetic fields, such as vehicles, buildings, and overhead power lines.

The watch uses automatic calibration by default. If you experience irregular compass behavior, for example, after moving long distances or after extreme temperature changes, you can manually calibrate the compass.

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Compass** > **Calibrate**.
3 Move your wrist in a small figure eight motion until a message appears.

Setting the North Reference

You can set the directional reference used in calculating heading information.

1 From the watch face, hold •.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Compass** > **North Ref.**.
3 Select an option:
   - To set geographic north as the heading reference, select **True**.
   - To set magnetic north as the heading without declination, select **Magnetic**.
   - To set grid north (000º) as the heading reference, select **Grid**.
   - To set the magnetic variation value manually, select **User**, enter the magnetic variation, and select **Done**.

Altimeter and Barometer

The watch contains an internal altimeter and barometer. The watch collects elevation and pressure data continuously, even in low-power mode. The altimeter displays your approximate elevation based on pressure changes. The barometer displays environmental pressure data based on the fixed elevation where the altimeter was most recently calibrated (*Altimeter and Barometer Settings*, page 150). You can view the altimeter and

barometer from the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74), glances list (*Glances*, page 78), or apps list (*Apps*, page 10).

Altimeter and Barometer Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Altimeter & Barometer**.

Calibrate: Manually calibrates the altimeter and barometer sensor.

Auto Cal.: Self-calibrates the sensor each time you use satellite systems.

Sensor Mode: Sets the mode for the sensor. The Auto option uses both the altimeter and barometer according to your movement. You can use the Altimeter Only option when your activity involves changes in altitude, or the Barometer Only option when your activity does not involve changes in altitude.

Elevation: Sets the units of measure for elevation.

Pressure: Sets the units of measure for pressure.

Barometer Plot: Sets the length of time to show on the graph for the barometer glance.

Calibrating the Barometric Altimeter

Your watch was already calibrated at the factory, and the watch uses automatic calibration at your GPS starting point by default. You can manually calibrate the barometric altimeter if you know the correct elevation.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System**.
3. Select **Altimeter & Barometer**.
4. Select **Calibrate**.
5. Select an option:
   - To enter the current elevation manually, select **Enter Manually**.
   - To calibrate automatically from the digital elevation model, select **Use DEM**.
   - To calibrate automatically from your GPS location, select **Use GPS**.

Depth Sensor

Your watch contains a depth sensor for diving. When you descend to start a dive, the depth sensor detects the increase in pressure and the watch starts a dive activity.

Depth Sensor Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Depth Sensor**.

Auto Dive: Automatically starts a dive activity based on your last dive type when you begin your descent.

Snooze: Temporarily pauses the Auto Dive feature.

Time Settings

From the watch face, hold •◯, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Time**.

Time Format: Sets the watch to show time in a 12-hour, 24-hour, or military format.

Date Format: Sets the display order for the day, month, and year for dates.

Set Time: Sets the time zone for the watch. The Auto option sets the time zone automatically based on your GPS position.

Time: Sets the time if the Set Time option is set to Manual.

Time Sync: Syncs the time when you change time zones, and updates the time for daylight saving time (*Syncing the Time*, page 150).

Syncing the Time

Each time you turn on the watch and acquire satellites or open the Garmin Connect™ app on your paired phone, the watch automatically detects your time zone and the current time of day. You can also manually sync the time when you change time zones, and to update for daylight saving time.

1. From the watch face, hold •◯.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Time** > **Time Sync**.
3. Wait while the watch connects to your paired phone or locates satellites (*Acquiring Satellite Signals*, page 160).

   TIP: You can press •◯ to switch the source.

Changing the Default Watch Keyboard

You can change the default watch keyboard language and format.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Keyboard**.
3 Select **Add**, and select a keyboard option.
The keyboard option appears in the list.
4 Select the keyboard option, and scroll to move it to the top of the list.
★ appears next to the default keyboard.

Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch

You can enable the wake word for your watch and your phone's voice assistant.

NOTE: Enabling these settings reduces battery life.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Voice**.
3 Select an option:
- Select **"OK Garmin"** to enable the **Voice Command** watch wake word (*Using Voice Commands*, page 16).
- Select **"Phone Assistant"** to enable the **Phone Assistant** watch wake word (*Using the Phone Assistant*, page 110).

Advanced System Settings

From the watch face, hold •⌚, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Advanced**.

Format: Sets general format preferences, such as the units of measure, pace and speed shown during activities, and the start of the week (*Changing the Units of Measure*, page 151). You can also set geographical position format and datum options.

Data Recording: Configures how the watch records activity data (*Data Recording Settings*, page 151).

USB Mode: Sets the watch to use MTP (media transfer protocol) or Garmin® mode when connected to a computer.

Changing the Units of Measure

You can customize units of measure for distance, pace and speed, elevation, and more.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Advanced** > **Format** > **Units**.
3 Select a measurement type.
4 Select a unit of measure.

Data Recording Settings

From the watch face, hold •⌚, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Advanced** > **Data Recording**.

Frequency: Sets how often the watch records activity data. The **Smart** frequency recording option (default) allows for longer activity recordings. The **Every Second** recording option provides more detailed activity recordings, but may not record entire activities that last for longer periods of time. It records key points where you change direction, pace, or heart rate. Your activity record is smaller, allowing you to store more activities on the device memory.

Log HRV: Enables the watch to record your heart rate variability during an activity (*Heart Rate Variability Status*, page 83).

Position Enhancement: Enables the watch to record more position details for certain activities, such as running or hiking.

Restore and Reset Settings

You can back up the settings from an existing Garmin® watch and restore those settings to a different, compatible Garmin watch using the Garmin Connect™ app (*Restoring Your Settings and Data from Garmin Connect™*, page 152). Settings include sport profiles, glances, user settings, workouts, and more.

From the watch face, hold •⌚, and select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Restore & Reset**.

Automatic Backups: Periodically backs up your settings to your Garmin Connect account.

Back Up Now: Manually backs up your settings to your Garmin Connect account.

View Report: Displays any issues from when your watch last restored settings.
This setting only appears if some watch settings did not restore properly.
Backup Contents: Displays the type of data that is saved.
Reset: Resets the selected settings to the factory default values (*Resetting All Default Settings*, page 152).

Restoring Your Settings and Data from Garmin Connect™

1. From the Garmin Connect app, select •••.
2. Select **Garmin Devices**, and select your watch.
3. Select **System** > **Restore & Reset** > **Device Backups**.
4. Select a backup from the list.
5. Select **Restore from Backup** > **Restore**.
6. Follow the on-screen instructions.
7. Wait for your watch to sync with the app.
8. On your watch, press ⌚, and select ✔.
   The watch restarts and restores your settings and data.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Resetting All Default Settings

Before you reset all default settings, you should sync the watch with the Garmin Connect™ app to upload your activity data.
You can reset all of the watch settings to the factory default values.

1. From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Restore & Reset** > **Reset**.
3. Select an option:
   - To reset all of the watch settings to the factory default values and save all user-entered information and activity history, select **Reset Default Settings**.
   - To delete all activities from the history, select **Delete All Activities**.
   - To delete all messages in the **Messenger** app, select **Delete All Messages**.
   - To reset all distance and time totals, select **Reset Totals**.
   - To delete your tissue load data for scuba diving, select **Reset Dive Computer**.
     NOTE: You should reset your tissue load only if you do not plan to use the device again in the future. This can be useful for dive shops that provide devices for rent.
   - To reset all of the watch settings to the factory default values and delete all user-entered information and activity history, select **Delete Data and Reset Settings**.
     NOTE: If you have set up a Garmin Pay™ wallet, this option deletes the wallet from your watch. If you have music stored on your watch, this option deletes your stored music.
   - To delete all temporary files from the watch, select **Delete Temporary Files**.

Viewing Device Information

You can view device information, such as the unit ID, software version, regulatory information, and license agreement.

1. From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2. Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **About**.

Viewing E-label Regulatory and Compliance Information

The label for this device is provided electronically. The e-label may provide regulatory information, such as identification numbers provided by the FCC or regional compliance markings, as well as applicable product and licensing information.

1. From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2. From the settings menu, select **System**.
3. Select **About**.

Device Information

About the AMOLED Display

By default, the watch settings are optimized for battery life and performance (*Tips for Maximizing the Battery Life*, page 157).

Image persistence, or pixel "burn-in," is normal behavior for AMOLED devices. To extend the AMOLED display life, you should avoid displaying static images at high brightness levels for long time periods. To minimize burn-in, the D2™ Mach 2 display turns off after the selected timeout (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105). You can turn your wrist toward your body, tap the touchscreen, or press a button to wake the watch.

Charging the Watch

⚠ WARNING

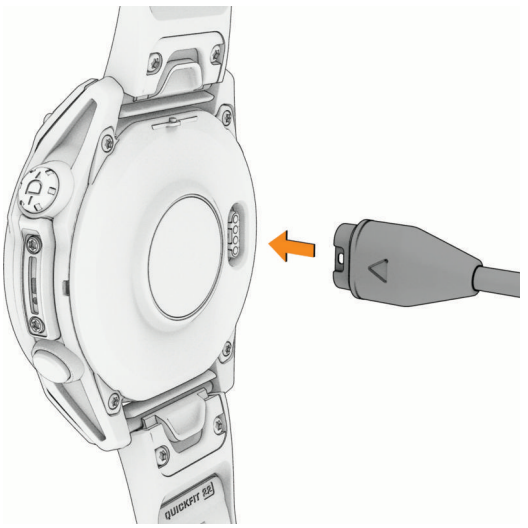
This device contains a lithium-ion battery. See the *Important Safety and Product Information* guide in the product box for product warnings and other important information.

NOTICE

To prevent corrosion, thoroughly clean and dry the contacts and the surrounding area before charging or connecting to a computer. Refer to the cleaning instructions (*Device Care*, page 155).

Your watch comes with a proprietary charging cable. For optional accessories and replacement parts, go to garmin.com, or contact your Garmin® dealer.

1 Plug the cable (▲ end) into the charging port on your watch.



2 Plug the other end of the cable into a USB-C® computer port or AC adapter (5 W minimum power rating). The watch displays the current battery charge level.

3 Disconnect the watch after the battery charge level reaches 100%.

Specifications

Battery type	Rechargeable, built-in lithium-ion battery
Water rating	10 ATM[1] 4 ATM Dive (EN 13319)[2]
Operating and storage temperature range	From -20° to 45°C (from -4° to 113°F)
Charging temperature range	From 0° to 45°C (from 32° to 113°F)
Underwater operating temperature range	From 0° to 40°C (from 32° to 104°F)
Decompression model	Bühlmann ZHL-16C

[1] The device withstands pressure equivalent to a depth of 100 m. For more information, go to www.garmin.com/waterrating.

[2] Designed to comply with CSN EN 13319.

Depth sensor	Accurate from 0 m to 40 m (0 ft. to 131 ft.) complying with EN 13319 Resolution (m): 0.1 m until 45 m Resolution (ft.): 1 ft.
Inspection interval	Inspect parts before each use for damage. Replace parts as needed.[1]
D2™ Mach 2 wireless frequencies and transmit power	M/N: A04806 2,4 GHz: < 13,60 dBm; 13,56 MHz: < -30 dBuA/m @ 10 m M/N: A04808 2,4 GHz: < 13,70 dBm; 13,56 MHz: < -30 dBuA/m @ 10 m
D2 Mach 2 SAR values	M/N: A04806 0,22 W/kg torso; 0,10 W/kg limb; 0,11 W/kg head M/N: A04808 0,31 W/kg torso; 0,14 W/kg limb; < 0,10 W/kg head
D2 Mach 2 Pro wireless frequencies and transmit power	M/N: A04809 2,4 GHz: < 20 dBm 13,56 MHz: < 42 dBuA/m @ 10 m LTE (B3, B8, B20): < 25 dBm NTN (n255, n256): < 25 dBm
D2 Mach 2 Pro SAR values	M/N: A04809 < 4,0 W/kg limb; < 2,0 W/kg head

Battery Information

The actual battery life depends on the features enabled on your watch, such as wrist-based heart rate, smartphone notifications, GPS, internal sensors, and connected sensors.

D2™ Mach 2 Series

Mode	D2 Mach 2 - 47 mm Battery Life	D2 Mach 2 - 51 mm Battery Life
Smartwatch mode	Up to 14 days with Gesture Up to 7 days with Always On Display	Up to 26 days with Gesture Up to 13 days with Always On Display
Battery saver watch mode	Up to 23 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display	Up to 41 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
GPS only mode	Up to 47 hours with Gesture Up to 37 hours with Always On Display	Up to 84 hours with Gesture Up to 65 hours with Always On Display
All satellite systems mode	Up to 38 hours with Gesture Up to 30 hours with Always On Display	Up to 68 hours with Gesture Up to 54 hours with Always On Display
All satellite systems plus multi-band mode	Up to 35 hours with Gesture[2] Up to 28 hours with Always On Display[2]	Up to 62 hours with Gesture[2] Up to 49 hours with Always On Display[2]
All satellite systems with music mode	Up to 10 hours with Gesture Up to 10 hours with Always On Display	Up to 18 hours with Gesture Up to 18 hours with Always On Display
Max. battery GPS mode	Up to 81 hours with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display	Up to 145 hours with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
Expedition GPS mode	Up to 17 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display	Up to 31 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
Fly activity with GPS and in-flight pulse oximeter	Up to 37 hours with Always On Display Not applicable for Gesture	Up to 58 hours with Always On Display Not applicable for Gesture

[1] Aside from normal wear and tear, performance is not affected by aging.
[2] Assuming typical use with SatIQ™ technology

D2 Mach 2 Pro Series

Mode	D2 Mach 2 Pro - 51 mm Battery Life
Smartwatch mode	Up to 24 days with Gesture Up to 12 days with Always On Display
Battery saver watch mode	Up to 34 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
GPS only mode	Up to 78 hours with Gesture Up to 56 hours with Always On Display
All satellite systems mode	Up to 60 hours with Gesture Up to 47 hours with Always On Display
All satellite systems plus multi-band mode	Up to 53 hours with Gesture[1] Up to 41 hours with Always On Display[1]
All satellite systems plus multi-band mode and LTE LiveTrack	Up to 21 hours with Gesture[1] Up to 19 hours with Always On Display[1]
All satellite systems plus multi-band mode and music	Up to 23 hours with Gesture[1] Up to 21 hours with Always On Display[1]
All satellite systems plus multi-band mode, LTE LiveTrack, and music	Up to 15 hours with Gesture[1] Up to 14 hours with Always On Display[1]
Max. battery GPS mode	Up to 123 hours with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
Expedition GPS mode	Up to 24 days with Gesture Not applicable for Always On Display
Fly activity with GPS and in-flight pulse oximeter	Up to 59 hours with Always On Display[1] Not applicable for Gesture[1]

Device Care

⚠ CAUTION

Do not remove the exterior guard piece on the right side of the watch between the two buttons. Doing so could damage the watch barometer and cause degraded barometer performance and/or adversely affect other measurements, such as air pressure and dive features, which could result in property damage or personal injury.

NOTICE

Do not use a sharp object to clean the device.

Never use a hard or sharp object to operate the touchscreen, or damage may result.

Do not expose the microphone and speaker openings to sunscreen or other chemicals. Doing so could clog or otherwise adversely affect the microphone and speaker, degrading their performance.

Avoid chemical cleaners, solvents, and insect repellents that can damage plastic components and finishes.

Thoroughly rinse the device with fresh water after exposure to chlorine, salt water, sunscreen, cosmetics, alcohol, or other harsh chemicals. Prolonged exposure to these substances can damage the case.

Do not wash the device under high pressure, because jets of water or air may cause damage to the depth sensor or barometer.

Keep the leather band clean and dry. Avoid swimming or showering with the leather band. Exposure to water or sweat can damage or discolor the leather band. Use silicone bands as an alternative.

Avoid extreme shock and harsh treatment, because it can degrade the life of the product.

Do not store the device where prolonged exposure to extreme temperatures can occur, because it can cause permanent damage.

[1] Assuming typical use with SatIQ™ technology

Discontinue use if the device is damaged or if it is stored at a temperature outside the specified storage temperature range.

Cleaning the Watch

⚠ CAUTION

Some users may experience skin irritation after prolonged use of the watch, especially if the user has sensitive skin or allergies. If you notice any skin irritation, remove the watch and give your skin time to heal. To help prevent skin irritation, ensure the watch is clean and dry, and do not overtighten the watch on your wrist.

NOTICE

Even small amounts of sweat or moisture can cause corrosion of the electrical contacts when connected to a charger. Corrosion can prevent charging and data transfer.

For more information, go to garmin.com/fitandcare.

1 Rinse with water, or use a damp lint-free cloth.
2 Allow the watch to dry completely.

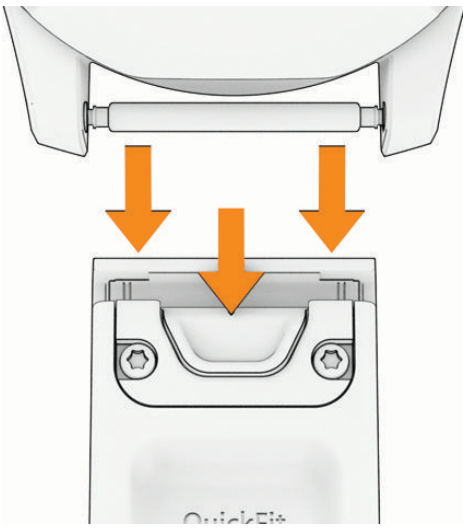
NOTE: After swimming, bathing, or exposing the watch to water, residual water in the speaker and microphone ports may cause the watch to be temporarily quieter than usual. The water does not cause harm to the watch, but it may take up to 24 hours for the water to evaporate. You can use the water ejection feature to help remove water from the ports (*Controls*, page 74).

Cleaning the Leather Bands

1 Wipe the leather bands with a dry cloth.
2 Use a leather conditioner to clean the leather bands.

Changing the QuickFit® Bands

1 Slide the latch on the QuickFit band, and remove the band from the watch.



2 Align the new band with the watch.
3 Press the band into place.
   NOTE: Make sure the band is secure. The latch should close over the watch pin.
4 Repeat steps 1 through 3 to change the other band.

Metal Watch Band Adjustment

If your watch includes a metal watch band, Garmin® recommends taking your watch to a jeweler or other professional to adjust the length of the metal band. For videos about adjusting the metal watch band, see garmin.com/videos/QuickFitMetalBand.

Troubleshooting

Product Updates

Your device automatically checks for updates when paired with a phone using Bluetooth® technology or when connected to Wi-Fi®. You can manually check for updates from the system settings (*System Settings*, page 148). On your computer, install Garmin Express™ (**garmin.com/express**). On your phone, install the Garmin Connect™ app.

This provides easy access to these services for Garmin® devices:

- Software updates
- Map updates

  NOTE: Map updates are available through Garmin Express.
- Course updates
- Data uploads to the Garmin Connect app on your phone
- Product registration

Getting More Information

You can find more information about this product on the Garmin® website.

- Go to **support.garmin.com** for additional manuals, articles, and software updates.
- Go to **aviationsupport.garmin.com** for in-country aviation product support information.
- Go to **garmin.com**, or contact your Garmin dealer for information about optional accessories and replacement parts.
- Go to **garmin.com/ataccuracy** for information about feature accuracy.

  This is not a medical device.

My watch is in the wrong language

You can change the watch language selection if you have accidentally selected the wrong language.

1. From the watch face, hold .
2. Select .
3. Select .
4. Select .
5. Select your language.

Tips for Maximizing the Battery Life

To extend the life of the battery, you can try these tips.

- Change the power mode during an activity (*Customizing the Power Mode for an Activity*, page 69).
- Turn on the battery saver feature from the controls menu (*Controls*, page 74).
- Use the battery glance to view usage details and adjust system settings (*Glances*, page 78).
- Reduce the screen timeout (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
- Decrease the flashlight brightness and edit the strobe settings (*Editing the Custom Flashlight Strobe*, page 77).
- Stop using the **Always On Display** screen timeout option, and select a shorter timeout (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
- Reduce the screen brightness (*Display and Brightness Settings*, page 105).
- Turn off wake words for your watch and phone's voice assistant (*Enabling a Wake Word for Your Watch*, page 151).
- On a D2™ Mach 2 Pro watch with an active inReach® service plan, disable the LTE connection or set the LTE mode to **Auto** (*LTE and Satellite Settings*, page 116).
- Use a GNSS satellite mode that prioritizes battery life during your activity (*Satellite Settings*, page 72).
- Turn off Bluetooth® technology when you are not using connected features (*Controls*, page 74).
- When pausing your activity for a longer period of time, use the **Resume Later** option (*Stopping an Activity*, page 33).
- Use a watch face that is not updated every second.

  For example, use a watch face without a second hand (*Customizing the Watch Face*, page 9).
- Limit the phone notifications the watch displays (*Enabling Phone Notifications*, page 111).

- Stop broadcasting heart rate data to paired devices (*Broadcasting Heart Rate Data*, page 126).
- Turn off wrist-based heart rate monitoring (*Wrist Heart Rate Monitor Settings*, page 126).

  NOTE: Wrist-based heart rate monitoring is used to calculate vigorous intensity minutes and calories burned.
- Turn on manual pulse oximeter readings (*Setting the Pulse Oximeter Mode*, page 127).

Manually Restarting Your Watch

If your watch stops responding, you can try these steps to force the watch to restart.

- Hold ⌚ until the watch turns off, and hold ⌚ to turn on the watch.
- Plug the watch into a USB-C® charging port for at least 30 seconds, unplug the cable, and plug the cable in again.

Fixing a Device in Recovery Mode

Recovery mode options appear on the device when it cannot resolve a software issue.

Select one or more recovery mode options:

Attempt Recovery	Attempt Recovery: This is the most common solution to repair a software issue. In most cases, you won't lose any activity data.
Help	Help: You scan the QR code to access the latest troubleshooting information from Garmin® Product Support.
Cancel Activity	Cancel Activity: If you are currently recording an activity, this cancels the activity. **NOTICE** The current activity data is deleted.
Delete Maps	Delete Maps: Removes the maps from the device. **NOTICE** This deletes the map files from your device. When you have access to your computer, you can use the Garmin Express™ application to restore the map files.
Connect to Computer	Connect to Computer: When you have access to your computer, you can use the Garmin Express application to update the software.
Factory Reset	Factory Reset: Restores the device to the factory defaults. **NOTICE** This deletes all user data, settings, and pairing information. Any data that has been synced to your Garmin Connect™ account can be restored.
Power Off	Power Off: Turns the device off.

Is my phone compatible with my watch?

The D2™ Mach 2 watch is compatible with phones using Bluetooth technology.

Go to **garmin.com/ble** for Bluetooth compatibility information.

Go to garmin.com/voicefunctionality for voice functionality compatibility information.

My phone will not connect to the watch

If your phone will not connect to the watch, you can try these tips.

- Turn off your phone and your watch, and turn them back on again.
- Enable Bluetooth® technology on your phone.
- Update the Garmin Connect™ app to the latest version.
- Remove your watch from the Garmin Connect app and the Bluetooth settings on your phone to retry the pairing process.
- If you bought a new phone, remove your watch from the Garmin Connect app on the phone you intend to stop using.
- Bring your phone within 10 m (33 ft.) of the watch.
- On your phone, open the Garmin Connect app, and select ••• > **Garmin Devices** > **Add Device** to enter pairing mode.
- From the watch face, hold ⌚, and select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Phone** > **Pair Phone**.

Can I use my Bluetooth® sensor with my watch?

The watch is compatible with some Bluetooth sensors. The first time you connect a sensor to your Garmin® watch, you must pair the watch and sensor. After they are paired, the watch connects to the sensor automatically when you start an activity and the sensor is active and within range.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **Connectivity** > **Sensors & Accessories** > **Add New**.
3 Select an option:
   - Select **Search All**.
   - Select your sensor type.

   You can customize the optional data fields (*Customizing the Data Screens*, page 66).

My headphones will not connect to the watch

If your Bluetooth® headphones were previously connected to your phone, they may connect to your phone automatically instead of connecting to your watch. You can try these tips.

- Turn off Bluetooth technology on your phone.

  Refer to the owner's manual for your phone for more information.
- Stay 10 m (33 ft.) away from your phone while connecting your headphones to your watch.
- Pair your headphones with your watch (*Connecting Bluetooth® Headphones*, page 142).

My music cuts out or my headphones won't stay connected

When using a D2™ Mach 2 watch connected to Bluetooth® headphones, the signal is strongest when there is a direct line of sight between the watch and the antenna on the headphones.

- If the signal passes through your body, you may experience signal loss or your headphones may become disconnected.
- If you wear your D2 Mach 2 watch on your left wrist, you should make sure the headphone's Bluetooth antenna is on your left ear.
- Since headphones vary by model, you can try wearing the watch on your other wrist.
- If you are using metal or leather watch bands, you can switch to silicone watch bands to improve signal strength.

The speaker or microphone is quiet after water exposure

After swimming, bathing, or exposing the watch to water, residual water in the speaker and microphone ports may cause the watch to be temporarily quieter than usual. The water does not cause harm to the watch, but it may take up to 24 hours for the water to evaporate. Follow the device care instructions when you clean your watch after water exposure (*Device Care*, page 155). You can use the water ejection feature to help remove water from the ports (*Controls*, page 74).

How can I undo a lap button press?

During an activity, you might accidently press the lap button. In most cases, ↶ appears on the screen next to a button, and you will have a few seconds to press the button and discard the most recent lap or sport change. The lap undo feature is available for activities that support manual laps, manual sport changes, and automatic sport changes. The lap undo feature is not available for activities that trigger automatic laps, runs, rests, or pauses, such as gym activities, pool swimming, and workouts.

Diving

Resetting Your Tissue Load

You can reset your current tissue load saved on the dive computer. You should reset your tissue load only if you do not plan to use the dive computer again in the near future. This can be useful for dive shops that provide dive computers for rent.

1 From the watch face, hold •⌚.
2 Select **Watch Settings** > **System** > **Restore & Reset** > **Reset** > **Reset Dive Computer**.

Resetting the Surface Pressure

The device automatically determines the surface pressure using the barometric altimeter. Large pressure changes, such as during a flight, can cause the dive computer to automatically start a dive activity. If the dive

computer starts a dive activity incorrectly, you can reset the surface pressure by connecting the dive computer to a computer. If you do not have access to a computer, you can reset the surface pressure manually.

1 Hold ⌚ until the dive computer turns off.
2 Hold ⌚ to turn on the dive computer.
3 When the product logo appears, hold ⌚ until you are prompted to reset the surface pressure.
4 Select ✔.

Troubleshooting for Dive Setup Sharing

If you encounter issues sharing dive settings between your devices (*Sharing Dive Settings Between Devices*, page 58), you can try these troubleshooting tips.

Issue	Cause	Resolution
The dive computer does not appear as an available device or is unable to receive data.	• The Garmin Share app is turned off. • The Setup Sharing acknowledgment has not been accepted. • The device has not enabled the pre-dive check options. • There are too many Bluetooth® enabled devices connected to the Garmin Share app.	• Open the Garmin Share app or navigate to the dive pre-check screen on both dive computers. • In the Dive Setup menu, accept the disclaimers and enable the Setup Sharing pre-dive check options. • Remove a device from the Garmin Share app.
Some settings were received in the Garmin Share app, but were not applied.	• The dive computer sending data has a setting or feature that the receiving dive computer does not have. • The dive computer sending data sent a non-dive feature, such as a waypoint.	• Review the settings that were not applied. • Navigate to the pre-dive check screen and apply the new settings.
The incoming data is not supported or uses an incompatible dive mode.	• Settings cannot be applied from one dive mode to a different dive mode. • Your dive computer does not have that dive mode. • Your dive computer does not support that gas, and the gases will not be transferred. • You are locked out of the dive mode.	• Select matching dive modes on both dive computers. • Select different gases to transfer from the source device. • Disable the Deco Lockout option or reset your tissue load.
The timestamp data for CNS, OTU, SI time, or no-fly time seems incorrect.	• One device has the incorrect time. • By design, no-fly time is not recalculated after a data transfer.	Make sure both devices show the correct time. You can sync with a paired phone or acquire GPS signals to update the current time.
The device is unable to run a dive test against the other dive computer.	The device attempts to verify NDL and TTS times if the settings have been applied within five minutes of being created. This warning is to signify that those usual checks have not been performed.	Apply new settings within five minutes of the settings transfer.
Decompression guidance does not match.	• The new dive settings have been applied, but the tissue load does not match. • The new tissue load has been applied, but the dive settings do not match.	• Review the transferred data, and evaluate which tissue load is correct. If necessary, transfer the correct tissue load to one of the devices. • Transfer the dive settings as well as the tissue load.
The N2/He Load does not match after transferring tissues.	• The surface pressure of the two dive computers does not match. This can happen with normal variance between depth sensors. • Once per minute processing has happened on one device but not the other. This is especially notable immediately after a dive, as you are quickly off-gassing. • The high gradient factor is different.	• If you did not receive a message about differing decompression guidance, you should not need to worry about a small (<5%) difference in tissue load. • Apply tissue load settings quickly after sending or receiving them. • Update the gradient factor settings to match.

Acquiring Satellite Signals

The device may need a clear view of the sky to acquire satellite signals. The time and date are set automatically based on the GPS position.

TIP: For more information about GPS, go to garmin.com/aboutGPS.

1 Go outdoors to an open area.
   The front of the device should be oriented toward the sky.
2 Wait while the device locates satellites.
   It may take 30–60 seconds to locate satellite signals.

Tips for Improving GNSS Satellite Reception

- Frequently sync the device to your Garmin® account:
  - Connect your device to a computer using the USB cable and the Garmin Express™ application.
  - Sync your device to the Garmin Connect™ app using your Bluetooth® enabled phone.
  - Connect your device to your Garmin account using a Wi-Fi® wireless network.

  While connected to your Garmin account, the device downloads several days of satellite data, allowing it to quickly locate satellite signals.
- Take your device outside to an open area away from tall buildings and trees.
- Remain stationary for a few minutes.
- Use watch bands that do not include metal parts close to the watch housing, such as silicone watch bands.

The heart rate on my watch is not accurate

For more information on your heart rate sensor, go to garmin.com/heartrate.

The activity temperature reading is not accurate

Your body temperature affects the temperature reading for the internal temperature sensor. To get the most accurate temperature reading, you should remove the watch from your wrist and wait 20 to 30 minutes.

You can also use an optional tempe™ external temperature sensor to view accurate ambient temperature readings while wearing the watch.

Exiting Demo Mode

Demo mode shows a preview of features on your watch.

1 Quickly press ⌚ eight times.
2 Select ✔.

Activity Tracking

For more information about activity tracking accuracy, go to garmin.com/ataccuracy.

My step count does not seem accurate

If your step count does not seem accurate, you can try these tips.

- Wear the watch on your non-dominant wrist.
- Carry the watch in your pocket when pushing a stroller or lawn mower.
- Carry the watch in your pocket when actively using your hands or arms only.

  NOTE: The watch may interpret some repetitive motions, such as washing dishes, folding laundry, or clapping your hands, as steps.

The step counts on my watch and my Garmin Connect™ account don't match

The step count on your Garmin Connect account updates when you sync your watch.

1 Select an option:
   - Sync your step count with the Garmin Express™ application (*Using Garmin Connect™ on Your Computer*, page 119).
   - Sync your step count with the Garmin Connect app (*Using the Garmin Connect™ App*, page 119).
2 Wait while your data syncs.
   Syncing can take several minutes.
   NOTE: Refreshing the Garmin Connect app or the Garmin Express application does not sync your data or update your step count.

The floors climbed amount does not seem accurate

Your watch uses an internal barometer to measure elevation changes as you climb floors. A floor climbed is equal to 3 m (10 ft.).

- Avoid holding handrails or skipping steps while climbing stairs.
- In windy environments, cover the watch with your sleeve or jacket as strong gusts can cause erratic readings.

Appendix

Color Gauges and Running Dynamics Data

The running dynamics screen displays a color gauge for the primary metric. You can customize the primary metric. The color gauge shows you how your running dynamics data compare to those of other runners. The color zones are based on percentiles.

Garmin® has researched many runners of all different levels. The data values in the red or orange zones are typical for less experienced or slower runners. The data values in the green, blue, or purple zones are typical for more experienced or faster runners. More experienced runners tend to exhibit shorter ground contact times, lower vertical oscillation, lower vertical ratio, lower step speed loss, and higher cadence than less experienced runners. However, taller runners typically have slightly slower cadences, longer strides, and slightly higher vertical oscillation. Vertical ratio is your vertical oscillation divided by stride length. It is not correlated with height.

Go to garmin.com/runningdynamics for more information on running dynamics. For additional theories and interpretations of running dynamics data, you can search reputable running publications and websites.

Color Zone	Percentile in Zone	Cadence Range	Ground Contact Time Range	Step Speed Loss Range
Purple	>95	>185 spm	<218 ms	<8.2 cm/s
Blue	70–95	174–185 spm	218–248 ms	8.2-12.1 cm/s
Green	30–69	163–173 spm	249–277 ms	12.2-19.7 cm/s
Orange	5–29	151–162 spm	278–308 ms	19.8-25.9 cm/s
Red	<5	<151 spm	>308 ms	>25.9 cm/s

Ground Contact Time Balance Data

Ground contact time balance measures your running symmetry and appears as a percentage of your total ground contact time. For example, 51.3% with an arrow pointing left indicates the runner is spending more time on the ground when on the left foot. If your data screen displays both numbers, for example 48–52, 48% is the left foot and 52% is the right foot.

Color Zone	Red	Orange	Green	Orange	Red
Symmetry	Poor	Fair	Good	Fair	Poor
Percent of Other Runners	5%	25%	40%	25%	5%
Ground Contact Time Balance	>52.2% L	50.8–52.2% L	50.7% L–50.7% R	50.8–52.2% R	>52.2% R

While developing and testing running dynamics, the Garmin® team found correlations between injuries and greater imbalances with certain runners. For many runners, ground contact time balance tends to deviate further from 50–50 when running up or down hills. Most running coaches agree that a symmetrical running form is good. Elite runners tend to have quick and balanced strides.

You can watch the gauge or data field during your run or view the summary on your Garmin Connect™ account after your run. As with the other running dynamics data, ground contact time balance is a quantitative measurement to help you learn about your running form.

Vertical Oscillation and Vertical Ratio Data

The data ranges for vertical oscillation and vertical ratio are slightly different depending on the sensor and whether it is positioned at the chest (HRM 600, HRM-Fit™, or HRM-Pro™ series accessories) or at the waist (Running Dynamics Pod accessory).

Color Zone	Percentile in Zone	Vertical Oscillation Range at Chest	Vertical Oscillation Range at Waist	Vertical Ratio at Chest	Vertical Ratio at Waist
Purple	>95	<6.4 cm	<6.8 cm	<6.1%	<6.5%
Blue	70–95	6.4–8.1 cm	6.8–8.9 cm	6.1–7.4%	6.5–8.3%
Green	30–69	8.2–9.7 cm	9.0–10.9 cm	7.5–8.6%	8.4–10.0%

Color Zone	Percentile in Zone	Vertical Oscillation Range at Chest	Vertical Oscillation Range at Waist	Vertical Ratio at Chest	Vertical Ratio at Waist
Orange	5–29	9.8–11.5 cm	11.0–13.0 cm	8.7–10.1%	10.1–11.9%
Red	<5	>11.5 cm	>13.0 cm	>10.1%	>11.9%

VO2 Max. Standard Ratings

These tables include standardized classifications for VO2 max. estimates by age and sex.

Males	Percentile	20–29	30–39	40–49	50–59	60–69	70–79
Superior	95	55.4	54	52.5	48.9	45.7	42.1
Excellent	80	51.1	48.3	46.4	43.4	39.5	36.7
Good	60	45.4	44	42.4	39.2	35.5	32.3
Fair	40	41.7	40.5	38.5	35.6	32.3	29.4
Poor	0–40	<41.7	<40.5	<38.5	<35.6	<32.3	<29.4

Females	Percentile	20–29	30–39	40–49	50–59	60–69	70–79
Superior	95	49.6	47.4	45.3	41.1	37.8	36.7
Excellent	80	43.9	42.4	39.7	36.7	33	30.9
Good	60	39.5	37.8	36.3	33	30	28.1
Fair	40	36.1	34.4	33	30.1	27.5	25.9
Poor	0–40	<36.1	<34.4	<33	<30.1	<27.5	<25.9

Data reprinted with permission from The Cooper Institute®. For more information, go to www.CooperInstitute.org.

Running Economy Ratings

Color Zone	Rating	Males	Females
Pink	Elite	<185	<190
Purple	Superior	185 to 189	190 to 194
Blue	Expert	190 to 194	195 to 199
Green	Well Trained	195 to 204	200 to 209
Yellow	Trained	205 to 214	210 to 219
Orange	Intermediate	215 to 224	220 to 229
Red	Recreational	> 224	> 229

FTP Ratings

These tables include classifications for functional threshold power (FTP) estimates by sex.

Males	Watts per Kilogram (W/kg)
Superior	5.05 and greater
Excellent	From 3.93 to 5.04
Good	From 2.79 to 3.92
Fair	From 2.23 to 2.78
Untrained	Less than 2.23

Females	Watts per Kilogram (W/kg)
Superior	4.30 and greater
Excellent	From 3.33 to 4.29
Good	From 2.36 to 3.32

Females	Watts per Kilogram (W/kg)
Fair	From 1.90 to 2.35
Untrained	Less than 1.90

FTP ratings are based on research by Hunter Allen and Andrew Coggan, PhD, *Training and Racing with a Power Meter* (Boulder, CO: VeloPress, 2010).

Endurance Score Ratings

These tables include classifications for endurance score estimates by age and sex.

Males	Recreational	Intermediate	Trained	Well Trained	Expert	Superior	Elite
18-20	Less than 4999	5000-5699	5700-6299	6300-6999	7000-7599	7600-8299	8300 and greater
21-39	Less than 5099	5100-5799	5800-6599	6600-7299	7300-8099	8100-8799	8800 and greater
40-44	Less than 5099	5100-5799	5800-6499	6500-7199	7200-7899	7900-8599	8600 and greater
45-49	Less than 4999	5000-5699	5700-6399	6400-6999	7000-7699	7700-8399	8400 and greater
50-54	Less than 4899	4900-5499	5500-6099	6100-6799	6800-7399	7400-7999	8000 and greater
55-59	Less than 4599	4600-5099	5100-5699	5700-6199	6200-6799	6800-7299	7300 and greater
60-64	Less than 4299	4300-4799	4800-5299	5300-5699	5700-6199	6200-6699	6700 and greater
65-69	Less than 4099	4100-4499	4500-4899	4900-5399	5400-5799	5800-6199	6200 and greater
70-74	Less than 3799	3800-4199	4200-4599	4600-4899	4900-5299	5300-5699	5700 and greater
75-80	Less than 3599	3600-3899	3900-4299	4300-4599	4600-4999	5000-5299	5300 and greater
80 and older	Less than 3299	3300-3599	3600-3999	4000-4299	4300-4699	4700-4999	5000 and greater

Females	Recreational	Intermediate	Trained	Well Trained	Expert	Superior	Elite
18-20	Less than 4599	4600-5099	5100-5499	5500-5999	6000-6399	6400-6899	6900 and greater
21-39	Less than 4699	4700-5199	5200-5699	5700-6299	6300-6799	6800-7299	7300 and greater
40-44	Less than 4699	4700-5199	5200-5699	5700-6199	6200-6699	6700-7199	7200 and greater
45-49	Less than 4599	4600-5099	5100-5599	5600-6099	6100-6599	6600-7099	7100 and greater
50-54	Less than 4499	4500-4999	5000-5399	5400-5899	5900-6299	6300-6799	6800 and greater
55-59	Less than 4299	4300-4699	4700-5099	5100-5599	5600-5099	6000-6399	6400 and greater
60-64	Less than 4099	4100-4499	4500-4899	4900-5299	5300-5699	5700-6099	6100 and greater
65-69	Less than 3799	3800-4199	4200-4599	4600-4899	4900-5299	5300-5699	5700 and greater
70-74	Less than 3699	3700-4099	4100-4399	4400-4799	4800-5099	5100-5499	5500 and greater
75-80	Less than 3499	3500-3799	3800-4199	4200-4499	4500-4899	4900-5199	5200 and greater
80 and older	Less than 3199	3200-3499	3500-3799	3800-4099	4100-4399	4400-4699	4700 and greater

These estimates are provided and supported by Garmin Human Performance Lab™.

Wheel Size and Circumference

When used for cycling, your speed sensor automatically detects your wheel size. If necessary, you can manually enter your wheel circumference in the speed sensor settings.

The tire size for cycling is marked on both sides of the tire. You can measure the circumference of your wheel or use one of the calculators available on the internet.

Data Fields

⚠ WARNING

The aviation data fields are not intended to provide primary flight information and are to be used for supplemental purposes only.

NOTE: Not all data fields are available for all activity types. Some data fields require ANT+® or Bluetooth® accessories to display data. Some data fields appear in more than one category on the watch.

TIP: You can also customize the data fields from the watch settings in the Garmin Connect™ app.

Altitude Fields

Name	Description
ALT AGL	The current altitude above ground level.
Auto Altitude	The current altitude based on either the BARO Altitude or the GPS Altitude, whichever is calculated to be more relevant.
BARO Altitude	The current altitude based on the barometric altimeter and any manual barometric pressure adjustments.
Baro Setting	The current barometric altimeter setting. For example, based on the nearest METAR location or manual adjustment.
Cabin Altitude	The altitude of the air pressure inside an airplane's cabin.
Glide Ratio	In a flying activity, the horizontal distance an aircraft travels forward for every unit of altitude it loses.
GPS Altitude	The current altitude according to your GPS position.

Cadence Fields

Name	Description
Average Cadence	Cycling. The average cadence for the current activity.
Average Cadence	Running. The average cadence for the current activity.
Cadence	Cycling. The number of revolutions of the crank arm. Your device must be connected to a cadence accessory for this data to appear.
Cadence	Running. The steps per minute (right and left).
Lap Cadence	Cycling. The average cadence for the current lap.
Lap Cadence	Running. The average cadence for the current lap.
Last Lap Cadence	Cycling. The average cadence for the last completed lap.
Last Lap Cadence	Running. The average cadence for the last completed lap.

Charts

Name	Description
Altitude Chart	A chart showing your altitude throughout the flying activity.
Barometer Chart	A chart showing the barometric pressure over time.
Elevation Chart	A chart showing the elevation over time.
Ground Speed Chart	A chart showing your ground speed throughout the flying activity.
Heart Rate Chart	A chart showing your heart rate throughout the activity.
Pace Chart	A chart showing your pace throughout the activity.
Power Chart	A chart showing your power throughout the activity.
Speed Chart	A chart showing your speed throughout the activity.

Compass Fields

Name	Description
Bearing to NRST	The direction from your current location to a the nearest aviation location. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Bearing to Waypoint	The direction from your current location to a waypoint. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Compass Heading	The direction you are moving based on the compass.

Name	Description
Crosstrack	The horizontal distance between an aircraft's actual position and its intended flight path. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Desired Track	The desired path in degrees to the selected aviation location. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
GPS Heading	The direction you are moving based on GPS.
Heading	The direction you are moving.
Track	The path of an aircraft over the ground, influenced by wind.

Distance Fields

Name	Description
Distance	The distance traveled for the current track or activity.
Distance to NRST	The distance to the nearest aviation location.
Int. Distance	The distance traveled for the current interval.
Lap Distance	The distance traveled for the current lap.
Last Lap Distance	The distance traveled for the last completed lap.
Nautical Distance	The distance traveled in nautical meters or nautical feet.

Diving Fields

Name	Description
Ascent Rate	The current rate of ascent toward the surface.
CNS	Your current central nervous system oxygen toxicity percentage.
Current Gas PO2	The partial pressure of oxygen (PO2) of the diluent gas during a closed-circuit rebreather (CCR) dive.
Dive Number	The number of dives you have completed.
Last Dive Depth	The maximum depth achieved during the last dive.
Last Dive Time	The amount of time you spent below the surface during the last dive.
Maximum Depth	The maximum depth descended during a dive.
OTU	Your current oxygen toxicity units.
Surface Time	The amount of time elapsed since surfacing from a dive.
Time to Surface	The amount of time required to safely ascend to the surface.

Elevation Fields

Name	Description
Average Ascent	The average vertical distance of ascent since the last reset.
Average Descent	The average vertical distance of descent since the last reset.
Elevation	The altitude of your current location above or below sea level.
Glide Ratio	The ratio of horizontal distance traveled to the change in vertical distance.
GPS Elevation	The altitude of your current location using GPS.
Grade	The calculation of rise (elevation) over run (distance). For example, if for every 3 m (10 ft.) you climb you travel 60 m (200 ft.), the grade is 5%.
Lap Ascent	The vertical distance of ascent for the current lap.
Lap Descent	The vertical distance of descent for the current lap.
Last Lap Ascent	The vertical distance of ascent for the last completed lap.
Last Lap Descent	The vertical distance of descent for the last completed lap.
Maximum Ascent	The maximum rate of ascent in feet per minute or meters per minute since the last reset.
Maximum Descent	The maximum rate of descent in meters per minute or feet per minute since the last reset.
Maximum Elevation	The highest elevation reached since the last reset.
Minimum Elevation	The lowest elevation reached since the last reset.

Name	Description
Total Ascent	The total elevation distance ascended since the last reset.
Total Descent	The total elevation distance descended since the last reset.

Floors Fields

Name	Description
Floors Climbed	The total number of floors climbed up for the day.
Floors Descended	The total number of floors climbed down for the day.
Floors per Minute	The number of floors climbed up per minute.

Force Fields

Name	Description
3s Force	The 3-second moving average of force applied to the pedal platforms, in Newtons.
10s Force	The 10-second moving average of force applied to the pedal platforms, in Newtons.
30s Force	The 30-second moving average of force applied to the pedal platforms, in Newtons.
Avg Force	The average force applied to the pedal platforms during the activity, in Newtons.
Force	The force applied to the pedal platforms, in Newtons.
Lap Force	The average force applied to the pedal platforms during the current lap, in Newtons.
Lap Norm. Force	The normalized force applied to the pedal platforms during the current lap, in Newtons.
Last Lap Force	The average force applied to the pedal platforms during the previous lap, in Newtons.
Last Lap Norm. Force	The normalized force applied to the pedal platforms during the previous lap, in Newtons.
Max. Force	The maximum force applied to the pedal platforms during the activity, in Newtons.
Max. Lap Force	The maximum force applied to the pedal platforms during the current lap, in Newtons.
Normalized Force	The normalized force applied to the pedal platforms, in Newtons.

Gears

Name	Description
Di2 Battery	The remaining battery power of a Di2 sensor.
Front	The front bike gear from a gear position sensor.
Gear Battery	The battery status of a gear position sensor.
Gear Combo	The current gear combination from a gear position sensor.
Gears	The front and rear bike gears from a gear position sensor.
Gear Ratio	The number of teeth on the front and rear bike gears, as detected by a gear position sensor.
Rear	The rear bike gear from a gear position sensor.

Graphical

Name	Description
Cadence Gauge	Running. A color gauge showing your current cadence range.
Compass Gauge	The direction you are moving based on the compass.
GCT Balance Gauge	A color gauge showing the left/right balance of ground contact time while running.
Ground Contact Time Gauge	A color gauge showing the amount of time in each step that you spend on the ground while running, measured in milliseconds.
Heart Rate Gauge	A color gauge showing your current heart rate zone.
Heart Rate Zones Ratio	A color gauge showing the ratio of time spent in each heart rate zone.
PacePro Gauge	Running. Your current split pace and your target split pace.
Power Gauge	A color gauge showing your current power zone.
Stamina Gauge (Dist.)	A gauge showing your current stamina distance remaining.
Stamina Gauge (Time)	A gauge showing your current stamina time remaining.

Name	Description
Step Speed Loss Gauge	A color gauge showing your current step speed loss while running.
Step Speed Loss % Gauge	A color gauge showing your average step speed loss percent.
Total Ascent/Descent Gauge	The total elevation distances ascended and descended during the activity or since the last reset.
Training Effect Gauge	The impact of the current activity on your aerobic and anaerobic fitness levels.
Vertical Oscillation Gauge	A color gauge showing the amount of bounce while you are running.
Vertical Ratio Gauge	A color gauge showing the ratio of vertical oscillation to stride length.

Heart Rate Fields

Name	Description
% Heart Rate Reserve	The percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate).
Aerobic Training Effect	The impact of the current activity on your aerobic fitness level.
Anaerobic Training Effect	The impact of the current activity on your anaerobic fitness level.
Avg. %HRR	The average percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate) for the current activity.
Average HR	The average heart rate for the current activity.
Avg. HR %Max.	The average percentage of maximum heart rate for the current activity.
Heart Rate	Your heart rate in beats per minute (bpm). Your device must have wrist-based heart rate or be connected to a compatible heart rate monitor.
HR %Max.	The percentage of maximum heart rate.
HR Zone	The current range of your heart rate (1 to 5). The default zones are based on your user profile and maximum heart rate (220 minus your age).
Int. Avg. %HRR	The average percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate) for the current swim interval.
Int. Avg. %Max.	The average percentage of maximum heart rate for the current swim interval.
Int. Avg. HR	The average heart rate for the current swim interval.
Int. Max. %HRR	The maximum percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate) for the current swim interval.
Int. Max. %Max.	The maximum percentage of maximum heart rate for the current swim interval.
Int. Max. HR	The maximum heart rate for the current swim interval.
Lap %HRR	The average percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate) for the current lap.
Lap HR	The average heart rate for the current lap.
Lap HR %Max.	The average percentage of maximum heart rate for the current lap.
Last Lap %HRR	The average percentage of heart rate reserve (maximum heart rate minus resting heart rate) for the last completed lap.
Last Lap HR	The average heart rate for the last completed lap.
L. Lap HR %Max.	The average percentage of maximum heart rate for the last completed lap.
Time in Zone	The time elapsed in each heart rate zone.

Lengths Fields

Name	Description
Interval Lengths	The number of pool lengths completed during the current interval.
Lengths	The number of pool lengths completed during the current activity.

Navigation Fields

Name	Description
Bearing	The direction from your current location to a destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Course	The direction from your starting location to a destination. Course can be viewed as a planned or set route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Destination ETA	The estimated time of day when you will reach the final destination (adjusted to the local time of the destination). You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Destination ETE	The estimated time remaining until you reach the final destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Destination Location	The position of your final destination.
Destination Waypoint	The last point on the route to the destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Distance Remaining	The remaining distance to the final destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Distance To Next	The remaining distance to the next waypoint on the route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Distance to Waypoint	The remaining distance to the next waypoint on the route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Estimated Total Distance	The estimated distance from the start to the final destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
ETA at Next	The estimated time of day when you will reach the next waypoint on the route (adjusted to the local time of the waypoint). You must be navigating for this data to appear.
ETA	The estimated time of day when you will reach the final destination (adjusted to the local time of the destination). You must be navigating for this data to appear.
ETE	The estimated time remaining until you reach the final destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Glide Ratio to Destination	The glide ratio required to descend from your current position to the destination elevation. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Lat/Lon	The current position in latitude and longitude regardless of the selected position format setting.
Location	The current position using the selected position format setting.
Next Fork	The distance to the next fork on a trail based on the NextFork™ map guide.
Next Waypoint	The next point on the route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
NRST Airport	The airport identifier of the current nearest airport.
Off Course	The distance to the left or right by which you have strayed from the original path of travel. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Time to Next	The estimated time remaining before you reach the next waypoint in the route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Velocity Made Good	The speed at which you are closing on a destination along a route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Vertical Dist. to Dest.	The elevation distance between your current position and the final destination. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Vertical Speed to Target	The rate of ascent or descent to a predetermined altitude. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Waypoint ETA	The estimated time of day when you will reach the next waypoint on the route (adjusted to the local time of the waypoint). You must be navigating for this data to appear.
Waypoint ETE	The estimated time remaining until you reach the next point in your route. You must be navigating for this data to appear.

Other Fields

Name	Description
Active Calories	The calories burned during the activity.
Ambient Pressure	The uncalibrated environmental pressure.
Barometric Pressure	The current calibrated environmental pressure.

Name	Description
Battery Hours	The number of hours remaining before the battery power is depleted.
Battery Level	The remaining battery power.
COG	The actual direction of travel, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Destination LCL	The local time at the arrival airport.
Distance to Start Line	The remaining distance to the race starting line. You must be navigating for this data to appear.
eBike Battery	The remaining battery power of an ebike.
eBike Range	The estimated remaining distance the ebike can provide assistance.
Flow	The measurement of how consistently you maintain speed and smoothness through turns in the current activity.
GPS	The strength of the GPS satellite signal.
Grit	The measurement of difficulty for the current activity based on elevation, gradient, and rapid changes in direction.
Intervals	The number of intervals completed for the current activity.
Lap Flow	The overall flow score for the current lap.
Lap Grit	The overall grit score for the current lap.
Laps	The number of laps completed for the current activity.
Last Round Reps	The number of repetitions in the last round of the activity.
Lift	The angle of lift during a sailing activity.
Load	The training load for the current activity. Training load is the amount of excess post-exercise oxygen consumption (EPOC), which indicates the strenuousness of your workout.
LTE	The strength of the LTE signal.
Performance Condition	The performance condition score is a real-time assessment of your ability to perform.
Pulse Ox	Your current blood oxygen saturation percentage (SpO2) according to the pulse oximeter.
Reps	During a gym activity, the number of repetitions in a workout set.
Respiration Rate	Your respiration rate in breaths per minute (brpm).
Rounds	The number of exercise groups performed in an activity, such as jump rope.
Steps	The number of steps taken during the current activity.
Stress	Your current stress level.
Sunrise	The time of sunrise based on your GPS position.
Sunset	The time of sunset based on your GPS position.
Tack Assist	A gauge to help you determine if your boat is being lifted or headed.
Time of Day	The time of day based on your current location and time settings (format, time zone, daylight saving time).
Total Calories	The amount of total calories burned for the day.
UTC Time	The current coordinated universal time (UTC).

Pace Fields

Name	Description
500m Pace	The current pace per 500 meters.
Average 500m Pace	The average pace per 500 meters for the current activity.
Average Pace	The average pace for the current activity.
Grade Adjusted Pace	The average pace adjusted by the steepness of the terrain.
Int. Pace	The average pace for the current interval.
Lap 500m Pace	The average pace per 500 meters for the current lap.
Lap Pace	The average pace for the current lap.

Name	Description
Last Lap 500m Pace	The average pace per 500 meters for the last lap.
Last Lap Pace	The average pace for the last completed lap.
Last Len. Pace	The average pace for your last completed pool length.
Pace	The current pace.
Rolling Pace	The average pace of the last completed mile or kilometer.

PacePro Fields

Name	Description
Next Split Distance	Running. The total distance of the next split.
Next Split Target Pace	Running. The target pace for the next split.
Split Distance	Running. The total distance of the current split.
Split Distance Remaining	Running. The remaining distance of the current split.
Split Pace	Running. The pace for the current split.
Split Target Pace	Running. The target pace for the current split.

Power Fields

Name	Description
% FTP	The current power output as a percentage of functional threshold power.
3s Avg. Balance	The 3-second moving average of the left/right power balance.
3s Power	The 3-second moving average of power output.
3s Power to Weight	The 3-second average power measured in watts per kilogram for the current activity.
10s Avg. Balance	The 10-second moving average of the left/right power balance.
10s Power	The 10-second moving average of power output.
10s Power to Weight	The 10-second average power measured in watts per kilogram for the current activity.
30s Avg. Balance	The 30-second moving average of the left/right power balance.
30s Power	The 30-second moving average of power output.
30s Power to Weight	The 30-second average power measured in watts per kilogram for the current activity.
Avg. Balance	The average left/right power balance for the current activity.
Average Left PP	The average power phase angle for the left leg for the current activity.
Avg. Power	The average power output for the current activity.
Avg. Right PP	The average power phase angle for the right leg for the current activity.
Avg. Left PPP	The average power phase peak angle for the left leg for the current activity.
Avg. PCO	The average platform center offset for the current activity.
Avg. Power to Weight	The average power measured in watts per kilogram for the current activity.
Avg. Right PPP	The average power phase peak angle for the right leg for the current activity.
Balance	The current left/right power balance.
Intensity Factor	The Intensity Factor™ for the current activity.
Lap Balance	The average left/right power balance for the current lap.
Lap Left PPP	The average power phase peak angle for the left leg for the current lap.
Lap Left PP	The average power phase angle for the left leg for the current lap.
Lap Max. Power	The top power output for the current lap.
Lap NP	The average Normalized Power™ for the current lap.
Lap PCO	The average platform center offset for the current lap.
Lap Power	The average power output for the current lap.
Lap Power to Weight	The average power measured in watts per kilogram for the current lap.
Lap Right PPP	The average power phase peak angle for the right leg for the current lap.

Name	Description
Lap Right PP	The average power phase angle for the right leg for the current lap.
Last Lap Max. Power	The top power output for the last completed lap.
Last Lap NP	The average Normalized Power for the last completed lap.
Last Lap Power	The average power output for the last completed lap.
Left PPP	The current power phase peak angle for the left leg. Power phase peak is the angle range over which the rider produces the peak portion of the driving force.
Left PP	The current power phase angle for the left leg. Power phase is the pedal stroke region where positive power is produced.
Max. Power	The top power output for the current activity.
NP	The Normalized Power for the current activity.
Pedal Smooth.	The measurement of how evenly a rider is applying force to the pedals throughout each pedal stroke.
PCO	The platform center offset. Platform center offset is the location on the pedal platform where force is applied.
Power	The current power output in watts. For skiing activities, your device must be connected to a compatible heart rate monitor.
Power to Weight	The current power measured in watts per kilogram.
Power Zone	The current range of power output based on your FTP or custom settings.
Right PPP	The current power phase peak angle for the right leg. Power phase peak is the angle range over which the rider produces the peak portion of the driving force.
Right PP	The current power phase angle for the right leg. Power phase is the pedal stroke region where positive power is produced.
Time in Zone	The time elapsed in each power zone.
Time Seat.	The time spent seated while pedaling for the current activity.
Time Seat. Lap	The time spent seated while pedaling for the current lap.
Time Stand.	The time spent standing while pedaling for the current activity.
Time Stand. Lap	The time spent standing while pedaling for the current lap.
TSS	The Training Stress Score™ for the current activity.
Torque Eff.	The measurement of how efficiently a rider is pedaling.
Work	The accumulated work performed (power output) in kilojoules.

Rest Fields

Name	Description
Repeat On	The timer for the last interval plus the current rest (pool swimming).
Rest Timer	The timer for the current rest (pool swimming).

Run Dynamics

Name	Description
Average GCT Balance	The average ground contact time balance for the current session.
Average Ground Contact Time	The average amount of ground contact time for the current activity.
Average Step Speed Loss	The average measure of step speed loss for the current activity.
Avg. Step Speed Loss Percent	The average ratio of step speed loss over speed for the current activity.
Average Stride Length	The average stride length for the current session.
Average Vertical Oscillation	The average amount of vertical oscillation for the current activity.
Average Vertical Ratio	The average ratio of vertical oscillation to stride length for the current session.
GCT Balance	The left/right balance of ground contact time while running.
Ground Contact Time	The amount of time in each step that you spend on the ground while running, measured in milliseconds. Ground contact time is not calculated while walking.

Name	Description
Lap GCT Balance	The average ground contact time balance for the current lap.
Lap Ground Contact Time	The average amount of ground contact time for the current lap.
Lap Step Speed Loss	The average step speed loss for the current lap.
Lap Step Speed Loss Percent	The average ratio of step speed loss over speed for the current lap.
Lap Stride Length	The average stride length for the current lap.
Lap Vertical Oscillation	The average amount of vertical oscillation for the current lap.
Lap Vertical Ratio	The average ratio of vertical oscillation to stride length for the current lap.
Step Speed Loss	The measure of step speed loss in centimeters per second while running.
Step Speed Loss Percent	The ratio of step speed loss over speed while running.
Stride Length	The length of your stride from one footfall to the next, measured in meters.
Vertical Oscillation	The amount of bounce while you are running. The vertical motion of your torso, measured in centimeters for each step.
Vertical Ratio	The ratio of vertical oscillation to stride length.

Speed Fields

Name	Description
Avg. Moving Speed	The average speed when moving for the current activity.
Avg. Overall Speed	The average speed for the current activity, including both moving and stopped speeds.
Average Speed	The average speed for the current activity.
Avg. SOG	The average speed of travel for the current activity, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Ground Speed	Your current speed based on changes in GPS position.
Indicated Airspeed	The airspeed of an aircraft as shown on the aircraft's instruments. You must be connected to the avionics using the Garmin Pilot™ app for this data to appear.
Lap SOG	The average speed of travel for the current lap, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Lap Speed	The average speed for the current lap.
Last Lap SOG	The average speed of travel for the last completed lap, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Last Lap Speed	The average speed for the last completed lap.
Max. SOG	The maximum speed of travel for the current activity, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Maximum Speed	The top speed for the current activity.
Speed	The current rate of travel.
SOG	The actual speed of travel, regardless of the course steered and temporary variations in heading.
Vertical Speed	The rate of ascent or descent over time.

Stamina Fields

Name	Description
Stamina	The current remaining stamina.
Distance Remaining	The current stamina distance remaining at the current effort.
Stamina Potential	The remaining potential stamina.
Time Remaining	The current stamina time remaining at the current effort.

Stroke Fields

Name	Description
Average Distance Per Stroke	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current activity.
Average Distance Per Stroke	Swimming. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current activity.

Name	Description
Average Distance Per Stroke	Paddle sports. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current activity.
Average Stroke Rate	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the current activity.
Average Stroke Rate	Paddle sports. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the current activity.
Average Strokes Per Length	The average number of strokes per pool length during the current activity.
Distance Per Stroke	Indoor cross-country skiing. The distance traveled per stroke.
Distance Per Stroke	Paddle sports. The distance traveled per stroke.
Interval Strokes Per Length	The average number of strokes per pool length during the current interval.
Interval Stroke Type	The current stroke type for the interval.
Lap Distance Per Stroke	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current lap.
Lap Distance Per Stroke	Swimming. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current lap.
Lap Distance Per Stroke	Paddle sports. The average distance traveled per stroke during the current lap.
Lap Stroke Rate	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the current lap.
Lap Stroke Rate	Swimming. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the current lap.
Lap Stroke Rate	Paddle sports. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the current lap.
Lap Strokes	Indoor cross-country skiing. The total number of strokes for the current lap.
Lap Strokes	Swimming. The total number of strokes for the current lap.
Lap Strokes	Paddle sports. The total number of strokes for the current lap.
Last Lap Distance Per Stroke	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average distance traveled per stroke during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Distance Per Stroke	Swimming. The average distance traveled per stroke during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Distance Per Stroke	Paddle sports. The average distance traveled per stroke during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Stroke Rate	Indoor cross-country skiing. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Stroke Rate	Swimming. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Stroke Rate	Paddle sports. The average number of strokes per minute (spm) during the last completed lap.
Last Lap Strokes	Indoor cross-country skiing. The total number of strokes for the last completed lap.
Last Lap Strokes	Swimming. The total number of strokes for the last completed lap.
Last Lap Strokes	Paddle sports. The total number of strokes for the last completed lap.
Last Length Strokes	The total number of strokes for the last completed pool length.
Last Length Stroke Type	The stroke type used during the last completed pool length.
Stroke Rate	Indoor cross-country skiing. The number of strokes per minute (spm).
Stroke Rate	Swimming. The number of strokes per minute (spm).
Stroke Rate	Paddle sports. The number of strokes per minute (spm).
Strokes	Indoor cross-country skiing. The total number of strokes for the current activity.
Strokes	Swimming. The total number of strokes for the current activity.
Strokes	Paddle sports. The total number of strokes for the current activity.

Swolf Fields

Name	Description
Average Swolf	The average swolf score for the current activity. Your swolf score is the sum of the time for one length plus the number of strokes for that length (*Swim Terminology*, page 48). In open water swimming, 25 meters is used to calculate your swolf score.
Interval Swolf	The average swolf score for the current interval.
Lap Swolf	The swolf score for the current lap.
Last Lap Swolf	The swolf score for the last completed lap.
Last Length Swolf	The swolf score for the last completed pool length.

Temperature Fields

Name	Description
24-Hour Maximum	The maximum temperature recorded in the last 24 hours from a compatible temperature sensor.
24-Hour Minimum	The minimum temperature recorded in the last 24 hours from a compatible temperature sensor.
Avg Temperature	The average temperature during the activity.
Max Temperature	The maximum temperature during the activity.
Min Temperature	The minimum temperature during the activity.
Temperature	The temperature of the air. Your body temperature affects the temperature sensor. You can pair a tempe™ sensor with your device to provide a consistent source of accurate temperature data.

Timer Fields

Name	Description
Average Lap Time	The average lap time for the current activity.
Average Move Time	The average move time for the current activity.
Average Pose Time	The average pose time for the current activity.
Elapsed Time	The total time recorded. For example, if you start the activity timer and run for 10 minutes, then stop the timer for 5 minutes, then start the timer and run for 20 minutes, your elapsed time is 35 minutes.
Estimated Finish Time	The estimated finish time of the current activity.
Flight Timer	During a flying activity, the amount of time spent in the current flight.
Hobbs Time	The aircraft's total operating time, including flight time, in hours. You must be connected to the avionics using the Garmin Pilot app and have compatible devices for this data to appear.
Interval Time	The stopwatch time for the current interval.
Lap Time	The stopwatch time for the current lap.
Last Lap Time	The stopwatch time for the last completed lap.
Last Move Time	The stopwatch time for the last completed move.
Last Pose Time	The stopwatch time for the last completed pose.
Move Time	The stopwatch time for the current move.
Moving Time	The total time moving for the current activity.
Overall Ahead/Behind	The overall time ahead or behind of the target pace or speed.
Pose Time	The stopwatch time for the current pose.
Race Timer	The time elapsed in the current sail race.
Set Timer	During a strength training activity, the amount of time spent in the current workout set.
Stopped Time	The total time stopped for the current activity.
Swim Time	The swimming time for the current activity, not including rest time.
Timer	The current time of the activity timer.

Workout Fields

Name	Description
Reps to Go	During a workout, the remaining repetitions.
Step Duration	The time or distance remaining for the workout step.
Step Pace	The current pace during the workout step.
Step Speed	The current speed during the workout step.
Step Time	The time elapsed for the workout step.

support.garmin.com

© 2025 Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries

Garmin®, the Garmin logo, ANT+®, Approach®, Auto Lap®, Auto Pause®, Connext®, Edge®, GDL®, inReach®, Move IQ®, QuickFit®, TracBack®, Virtual Partner®, and Xero® are trademarks of Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries, registered in the USA and other countries. D2™, Body Battery™, Connect IQ™, Garmin Human Performance Lab™, Garmin AutoShot™, Garmin Connect™, Garmin Connect+™, Garmin Dive™, Garmin Explore™, Garmin Express™, Garmin GameOn™, Garmin Golf™, Garmin Messenger™, Garmin Pay™, Garmin Pilot™, Garmin Response℠, GCO™, Health Snapshot™, HRM-Fit™, HRM-Pro™, HRM-Swim™, HRM-Tri™, Index™, NextFork™, PacePro™, PLANESYNC™, Rally™, SatIQ™, tempe™, Varia™, and Vector™ are trademarks of Garmin Ltd. or its subsidiaries. These trademarks may not be used without the express permission of Garmin.

Android™ is a trademark of Google LLC. Applied Ballistics Quantum™ is a trademark, and Applied Ballistics® is a registered trademark of Applied Ballistics, LLC. Apple®, iPhone®, and iTunes® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries and regions. The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Garmin is under license. The Cooper Institute®, as well as any related trademarks, are the property of The Cooper Institute. Di2™ is a trademark of Shimano, Inc. Shimano® is a registered trademark of Shimano, Inc. iOS® is a registered trademark of Cisco Systems, Inc. used under license by Apple Inc. NOAA® is a registered service mark of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Overwolf™ is a trademark of Overwolf Ltd. STRAVA and Strava™ are trademarks of Strava, Inc. Training Stress Score™ (TSS), Intensity Factor™ (IF), and Normalized Power™ (NP) are trademarks of Peaksware, LLC. USB-C® is a registered trademark of USB Implementers Forum. Vectronix® is a trademark registered in the U.S. and owned by Safran Vectronix AG Corporation. Wi-Fi® is a registered mark of Wi-Fi Alliance Corporation. Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries. Zwift™ is a trademark of Zwift, Inc. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

September 2026 GUID-EA112C95-8563-4EED-AADF-2AADFBB95646 v5